

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS

# ARABIC

A.S. TRITTON



Teach  
Yourself  
Books

ARABIC

A.S.  
WATTON



**Scanned specially for**  
**Uz-Translations**

**by alexius108**



THE TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS  
EDITED BY LEONARD CUTTS

## ARABIC



**Uniform with this volume  
and in the same  
series**

---

Teach Yourself Afrikaans  
Teach Yourself Colloquial Arabic  
Teach Yourself Chinese  
Teach Yourself Czech  
Teach Yourself Danish  
Teach Yourself Dutch  
Teach Yourself English for Swahili-speaking People  
Teach Yourself English Grammar  
Teach Yourself Good English  
Teach Yourself Esperanto  
Teach Yourself Finnish  
Teach Yourself French  
Teach Yourself Everyday French  
Teach Yourself French Grammar  
Teach Yourself German  
Teach Yourself German Grammar  
Teach Yourself More German  
Teach Yourself Greek  
Teach Yourself Modern Greek  
Teach Yourself New Testament Greek  
Teach Yourself Hebrew  
Teach Yourself Icelandic  
Teach Yourself Irish  
Teach Yourself Italian  
Teach Yourself Japanese  
Teach Yourself Latin  
Teach Yourself Malay  
Teach Yourself Norwegian  
Teach Yourself Modern Persian  
Teach Yourself Polish  
Teach Yourself Portuguese  
Teach Yourself Russian  
Teach Yourself Samoan  
Teach Yourself Spanish  
Teach Yourself Everyday Spanish  
Teach Yourself Swahili  
Teach Yourself Swedish  
Teach Yourself Turkish  
Teach Yourself Urdu  
Teach Yourself Welsh

# TEACH YOURSELF ARABIC

BY

A. S. TRITTON, D.Litt.

*Professor Emeritus of Arabic, School of Oriental and African Studies,  
University of London.*



THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD  
102 NEWGATE STREET  
LONDON, E.C.1

*First printed, 1943*  
*This impression, 1962*

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

*Printed in Great Britain for The English Universities Press, Limited  
by Stephen Austin and Sons, Ltd., Hertford*

## INTRODUCTION

Arabic is a Semitic language and so different from those usually studied in Europe ; this is perhaps the main difficulty, there are none of the familiar landmarks. The verbs 'have' and 'be' do not exist ; when 'be' is indispensable, 'become' is used as a substitute and it does not take the same case after it as it does before it. The verb has no tenses, only two forms indicating completed and incomplete action. Normally the 'finished' form is used to describe past events but it is also used to express wishes and prayers where the action is only ideally finished. To make up for this poverty the verb is developed in other ways, thus 'be good', 'do well', 'approve' are all expressed by modifications of the same verb.

Most words are derived from roots which consist of three consonants called radicals ; it is obvious that these roots are not words. The addition of vowels, prefixes, suffixes to the root makes words. In this way some seventy word patterns are made, each with its own meaning. In English 'man', 'ran', 'fat' are all of the same pattern, a short vowel between two consonants but one is a noun, one a verb, and one an adjective ; this is impossible in Arabic. As there are so few word patterns the language sounds rather monotonous ; a poem must have the same rhyme throughout and it is common to find nearly one hundred lines with a complicated rhyme like *a:muha:*.

An illustration will make the next point clear. *KaTaBa* has a vowel between the first and the second radical, *yaKTuBu* has not. The beginner, especially in trying to hear the language, finds it hard to believe that the syllable *yak*, which ends in *k*, has anything to do with words which begin with *k*.

The Arab grammarians used the root *fʿl*, a real root, with its derivatives, as the type of all words ; they called *ka:tibu* the *fa:ʿilu* of *ktb* not the active participle and *maktu:bu* the *mafʿu:lu* instead of the passive participle.

*maktabu* and *maka:nu* are the *mafʿalu* of *ktb* and *kwn* respectively; we should call them nouns of place. In *maka:nu* the *w* of the root has combined with the short vowel to form a long one.

They recognized only three parts of speech, noun, verb, and particle. This classification is useful because, (1) it is not often needful to distinguish the noun from the adjective, what is true of the first is usually true of the second; and (2) there are some words which have no equivalents in English and are lumped together with prepositions and conjunctions as particles. In most languages the commonest words are irregular; this is also true of Arabic, but it has fewer irregularities than most languages. The structure of sentences is simple; elaborate periods are few; clause is joined to clause by 'and' while it is left to the imagination of the reader to supply a more precise link. Effects are obtained by the combination of simple words; 'what is in me' may mean 'my abilities' or 'my feelings' according to the context.

The primary sense of the root usually develops derived meanings. To push money to someone is to pay him; to try to push his enemy from him is to defend him. 'Total' and 'eloquence' both come from 'arrive'; by the addition of small sums you arrive at a total, by persuasive words your ideas arrive at the minds of your hearers. It is obvious that the primary meaning of the root must be picked out from the mass of derivatives.

Print and handwriting are essentially the same. The script unites at least two stages of history. At first only the consonants were written, though in the earliest known inscriptions three of them, *alif* (which was then the glottal stop), *w*, and *y* were also used to indicate the long vowels. The first book to be written was the Koran and this fixed the spelling of the language because the text was too sacred to be tampered with. Unfortunately, Muhammad spoke the dialect of Mecca which did not use the glottal stop, replacing it near *u* and *i* by the consonants *w* and *y*. Other dialects kept the glottal stop and were considered more elegant. So a special sign for the glottal stop was invented, written like the new vowel signs outside the consonantal

framework. It was introduced into the Koran and now appears in all Arabic sometimes alone and sometimes in conjunction with *alif* or *w* or *y* but representing only one sound.

Apart from school books all vowels are written only in the Koran ; elsewhere they are used sparingly.

The Arabic of a newspaper is in essentials that of the Koran ; the main difference is the large new vocabulary, partly old words with new meanings, partly loan words. The syntax is slightly simplified. The spoken tongue varies from place to place and differs from the written by the loss or degeneration of inflections and a different vocabulary. It is written only in jokes in comic papers, dialogue in novels, and sometimes in short stories.

The Arab sits on the floor and eats with his fingers ; when he wants to eat or sleep his food or bed is brought to him. The result is that many words, indispensable in English, scarcely occur in accounts of native life. For 'table' Syria uses an Italian, Egypt a Greek, and Mesopotamia a Persian word.

This book is an introduction to written Arabic which is understood from the Atlantic to the frontiers of Persia. It will not help a man to talk to a crossing-sweeper the day of his arrival but it will quicken his progress in talking after the first month or so.

Words, which have been fully explained in the lessons, are left out of the vocabularies.

Proper names, which come in the examples, have not been transliterated in the phonetic alphabet.

In the transcription *j* and *y* have their English sounds.

Owing to the nature of the type in this book many of the vowels are to the left of the consonants instead of being directly above them.



## ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The author and publishers gratefully acknowledge the assistance given by Professor J. R. Firth in connection with the sections on the sounds of the language.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	vii
ALPHABET . . . . .	13
LESSON	
1. NOUN AND ARTICLES . . . . .	24
2. GENDER . . . . .	28
3. CASE . . . . .	33
4. NUMBER . . . . .	38
5. BROKEN PLURALS . . . . .	43
6. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	48
7. VERB—PERFECT . . . . .	53
8. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE . . . . .	58
9. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	63
10. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	67
11. IRREGULAR NOUNS . . . . .	72
12. IMPERATIVE—PARTICIPLES—INFINITIVE . . . . .	77
13. MOODS . . . . .	81
14. NEGATIVES . . . . .	85
15. MORE ABOUT CASES . . . . .	90
16. WEAK—HOLLOW—VERBS . . . . .	96
17. STRONG VERB—DERIVED STEMS . . . . .	100
18. PASSIVE . . . . .	108
19. THAT—CONJUNCTION . . . . .	111
20. ADVERBS . . . . .	117

LESSON	PAGE
21. VERBS FIRST 'W' AND 'Y' . . . . .	123
22. RELATIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	128
23. DOUBLED VERBS . . . . .	132
24. HOLLOW VERBS ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	137
25. VERBS WITH THE GLOTTAL STOP . . . . .	141
26. VERBS—THIRD WEAK . . . . .	145
27. VERBS—DOUBLY WEAK . . . . .	152
28. CONDITIONAL AND EXCEPTIVE SENTENCES . . . . .	157
29. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	165
30. NUMERALS . . . . .	171
31. NOUN FORMS . . . . .	179
32. SOME VERBS . . . . .	187
33. SOME NOUNS . . . . .	194
34. EXCLAMATIONS . . . . .	200
35. CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES . . . . .	207
36. PREPOSITIONS—CALENDAR . . . . .	213
CONCLUSION . . . . .	222
TABLES . . . . .	224
KEY . . . . .	256
INDEX . . . . .	295

## THE ALPHABET

Writing runs from right to left and the letters consist of strokes or strokes and dots. Vowels are not counted letters. At the end of a word or when standing alone many letters end with a flourish (compare the figures in a doctor's prescription 111). There are two classes of letters; those which can be joined on both sides and those which can only be joined to the preceding letter. The first class has four forms, initial, medial, final, and independent; the second has two, final and independent. The essential part of the letter remains unchanged as is shown here:—

independent	final	medial	initial
ب	ب	ب	ب

when there is a final flourish the dot or dots are often put in the middle of it.

Name.	Independent.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Equivalent.
<i>alif</i>	ا	ا			ʾ
<i>bā</i>	ب	ب	ب	ب	b
<i>tā</i>	ت	ت	ت	ت	t
<i>thā</i>	ث	ث	ث	ث	θ
<i>jīm</i>	ج	ج	ج	ج	j
<i>hā</i>	ح	ح	ح	ح	h
<i>khā</i>	خ	خ	خ	خ	x
<i>dāl</i>	د	د			d
<i>dhāl</i>	ذ	ذ			ð
<i>rā</i>	ر	ر			r
<i>zā</i>	ز	ز			z

Name.	Independent.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Equivalent.
<i>sīn</i>	س	س	س	س	s
<i>shīn</i>	ش	ش	ش	ش	ʃ
<i>ṣād</i>	ص	ص	ص	ص	s
<i>ḍād</i>	ض	ض	ض	ض	ḍ
<i>ṭā</i>	ط	ط	ط	ط	t
<i>ẓā</i>	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	ḏ
<i>‘ain</i>	ع	ع	ع	ع	‘
<i>ghain</i>	غ	غ	غ	غ	ɣ
<i>fā</i>	ف	ف	ف	ف	f
<i>ḵāf</i>	ق	ق	ق	ق	q
<i>kāf</i>	ك	ك	ك	ك	k
<i>lām</i>	ل	ل	ل	ل	l
<i>mīm</i>	م	م	م	م	m
<i>nūn</i>	ن	ن	ن	ن	n
<i>hā</i>	ه	ه	ه ه	ه	h
<i>warw</i>	و	و			w
<i>yā</i>	ي	ي ي	ي	ي	y

Even in old Arabic the feminine termination *at* was often pronounced *ah* and written with *h*. When they began to study their own grammar they rectified the existing spelling by putting the two dots of *t* over the *h* **ة** or **ة**—and this hybrid must be pronounced *t*.

In writing it is often convenient to put one consonant above another:—

**حجج** *hjj*; **لمح** *lmh*; **لمح** *lmh*; **لمح** *lmh*. In a book printed in Europe this last might appear as **حجج**.

## CONSONANTS

Twelve of the consonants form correlative pairs.

	Tip of Tongue				Back of tongue towards soft palate	Throat and larynx
	Between teeth	Touching upper teeth	Behind lower teeth (see below)	Behind upper teeth		
Breathed unsingable .	θ	t	ʈ	s	x	ħ
Voiced singable .	ð	d	ɖ	z	ɣ	ʁ

The rest, including liquids and semivowels, stand in the next table in the order of their articulation, beginning with the lips and ending with the glottis, i.e. the space between the vocal cords, which may close the glottis completely in a stop *p* or remain apart allowing the passage of breath in *h*.

	Labial	Labio-dental	Dental	Gums	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Glottal
Voiced .	b		ð		j			h
Breathed .		f		ʃ s		k	q	ʔ (h)
Liquids and semi vowels (voiced)	m w		l	r n	y			



The six pairs :—

θ as English 'th' in 'think'.

ð as 'th' in 'this'.

t as 't' in 'eighth'.

d as 'd' in 'width'.

ṭ voiceless, ḍ voiced; counterparts of 't' and 'd'.

Emphatics.—Tip of tongue behind lower teeth, blade behind upper teeth touching gums. There is a depression or hollowing of the tongue just behind this and a raising of the back of the tongue. The sides of the tongue make a sort of inverted lid for the upper jaw, overflowing the back teeth and just touching the inside of the cheeks. The back of the tongue is raised in the same way for the other two emphatics ṣ and ḏ.

ṣ breathed, ḏ voiced.

ṣ is a strong clear sound as in 'hissing' to be sharply differentiated from the emphatic ṣ; the tip of the tongue is behind the upper teeth.

ḏ is a clear buzzing sound as in whizzing.

ṣ breathed, ḏ voiced.

ṣ is like the 'ch' in the Scottish 'loch' or the German 'ach' but more scrappy. The difficulty is not so much in the sound as in the positions in which it can occur—e.g. initially. Pronounce 'loch' and then try to pronounce it backwards.

ḏ bears a similar relation to ṣ as ḏ does to ṣ. Try to voice ḏ, that is, make it a singable sound, put the buzz of voice into it. Make it a little further back than ṣ; do not roll it, thus making it a back ṣ.

ḥ breathed, ʕ voiced.

ḥ differs from ḥ, which is frequently voiced, and has a sharper friction of an entirely different resonance caused by the forced depression of the back of the tongue and the tightening of the throat, the larynx being raised at the same time. The back of the tongue is as low as when the doctor presses it down with a spoon. With ʕ it is very like the stage whisper

‘ha!’ It must not be produced with scrappy friction which confuses it with **ħ**.

- ʕ** is the voiced correlative of **ħ** pronounced with more tightening of the throat and forcing up of the larynx. The feeling in the throat is suggestive of slight retching. If you pronounce English vowels with a tightened throat and squeezed larynx, producing a metallic, rather low-pitched voice, they will be near to Arabic vowels in the neighbourhood of this consonant.

The two remaining emphatics:—

- ʕ** is the counterpart of **ʕ** and is made with the blade of the tongue against the teeth ridge, the tip being behind the lower teeth.
- ð** is the counterpart of **ð**; it is interdental but the tip of the tongue points upwards to the upper lip.

The four emphatics and **q** give to the vowel ‘a’, when it precedes or follows them, special dark qualities like the vowel in ‘not’.

- q** is the furthest back **k** sound you can make, with the back of the tongue closing the arches of the back of the mouth, which are laterally squeezed nearer together to make the closure easier.
- ʃ** as in ‘ship’. In Arabic **s** and **h** can come together without producing the **ʃ** sound.
- ʔ** the glottal stop. This sound is commonly used in Cockney instead of ‘t’ in words like ‘better’, ‘bottle’ and also in standard English when a word which begins with a vowel is strongly emphasized, **ʔ** absolutely **ʔ** awful.
- r** is rolled as in Scotland; never fricative as in southern England.

The other consonants need no remark.

## VOWELS

Three, which occur both short and long, are recognised in writing. Doubtless there were many variations in

speech but only one is mentioned here. The consonants *alif*, 'w,' and 'y' were used to indicate the long 'a', 'u', and 'i'. The signs are put above or below the consonant which precedes the vowel.

NAME.	SIGN.	SOUND.	SYMBOL.
i, short	ـِ	as in 'sin' . . . .	i
long	يـِ	as in 'yeast' . . . .	i:
u, short	ـُ	much as in south English 'foot' . . . .	u
long	وـُ	much as in 'food' . . . .	u:
a, short	ـَ	as in south English 'bat' . . . .	a
long	اـَ	as in south English 'man' (drawled) . . . .	a:

There are two diphthongs :

ai	يـِـَ	much as in south English 'fight' . . . .	ay
au	وـِـَ	much as in south English 'shout' . . . .	aw

Near an emphatic consonant 'a' short is like the vowel in 'not'; 'a' long is like that in 'was' (drawled); represented by *v* and *v:*; and *ay* becomes more like the sound in 'boy'. There is no English equivalent of *aw* under these circumstances; the 'a' component becomes *v*.

#### OTHER CONVENTIONAL SIGNS

Sukûn.—Every consonant, which has no vowel immediately following it, is marked by sukûn °. This of course

does not apply when the consonant is a letter of prolongation, only indicates a long vowel, as in *سُو* *su:*, contrasted with *سَو* *saw*, or when it is written but not pronounced, as *الدَّارُ* *adda:ru*, where the 'l' is assimilated to the 'd'.

Shadda.—If the same consonant is repeated and no vowel comes between the two, it is written once and the sign shadda " put over it. This may be due to assimilation, as in *adda:ru* above, or it may be part of the word form ;

thus *كَسَرَ* *kasara*, 'he broke,' but *كَسَّرَ* *kassara*, 'he smashed,' when the first syllable ends with 's' and the second begins with 's'. Apparent exceptions are due to the fact that the two consonants belong to different words

as *اللَّيْلُ* *allaylu*. The first 'l' belongs to the article and the second to the noun. The first 'l' does not take sukûn because it has been assimilated to the second and is indicated by shadda.

Nunation.—The word nunation is formed from the Arabic name of the letter 'n'. In one class of nouns the final vowel, which is the case ending, is written twice to indicate the pronunciations *un*, *an*, *in* respectively. With 'u' the upper sign is usually reversed ٜ or ٜ is used instead.

*مَدِينَةٌ* *madi:natun* ; *مَدِينَةً* *madi:natan* ; *مَدِينَةٍ* *madi:natin*.

Hamza.—This is the glottal stop (see Introduction). The sign ʾ is usually written with one of the three consonants *alif*, *w*, or *y*, which is called its bearer. *y*, when written with hamza, always loses its dots.

Hamza always has *alif* at the beginning of a word and, after the vowel 'a', at the end.

After a long vowel it has no bearer except in the sequence *a:ʔi* when it usually has 'y'.

After sukûn it may be written over a line connecting two letters.

أَقْرَأَ *ʔaqraʔu*; إِبِلٌ *ʔibilun*; أَذُنٌ *ʔudunun*  
 كِسَاءٌ *kisaiʔun*; سَاءَلٌ *sa:ʔala*; مَسْئُولٌ *masʔulun*  
 أَبْنَاهُ *ʔabnaiʔihi*; سُؤَالٌ *suʔa:lun*; أَسْئَلَةٌ *ʔasʔilatun*

To find out how to write hamza.—Pronounce the word as if the hamza were not there, write the result, and add hamza. Take the word *fuʔa:dun*. Without hamza it becomes *fuwa:dun*, which is the correct way to write it,

فَوَادٌ then add hamza فَوَادٌ. The plural of this word is *ʔafʔidatun*; without hamza it becomes *ʔafi:datun*. This is

أَفِيدَةٌ remove the dots from the 'y' and add hamza, and remove 'i' one step to the left, أَفِيدَةٌ is the right spelling.

Madda.—This takes the place of hamza when *a:* follows the glottal stop. This sound group may be original or it may be derived from the group *ʔaʔ*, which to Arabs is unpronounceable. In both cases it is written آ. So

آكَلٌ *ʔa:kala* may stand for *ʔa:kala* 'he ate with' and *ʔaʔkala* 'he fed' (transitive).

Syllable.—Every syllable must begin with one consonant; the glottal stop is a consonant. A syllable may consist of consonant and vowel or of consonant vowel consonant.

**Liaison.**—Some words should begin with two consonants. From what has been said about the syllable it is clear that this is impossible so a helping vowel is put before the first consonant when the word stands alone. This vowel is indicated by *alif* always. If such a word stands alone the helping vowel is ushered in by the glottal stop. In connected speech the helping vowel is dropped and the final vowel of the preceding word takes its place. If there is no final vowel, a short one, usually 'i', is inserted.

In connected speech the sign ' is written over the *alif*.

In liaison a final long vowel is shortened in pronunciation and a diphthong is resolved into its component parts.

The best manner is never to write hamza over the liaison *alif* and that is followed in this book.

The words

أَبْتَدَأَ *ibtida:Pi*    اِنْهَزَامَ *inhiza:mi*    اَلْعَدُوَّ *alSaduwwi*

when connected, read

فِي أَبْتَدَأَ اِنْهَزَامَ اَلْعَدُوَّ

*fibtida:Pinhiza:miSaduwwi* (note that *fi:* is shortened).

يَدَيَّ *yaday* becomes *yadayi*

يَدَيَّ اَلْكَلْبِ *yadayilkalbi*

رَمَوْا *ramaw* (*alif* is purely graphic) becomes *ramawu*

رَمَوْا اَلْعَدُوَّ *ramawulSaduwwa*

The Arabs call this هَمْزَةُ اَلْوَصْلِ *hamzatulwasli*.



## ACCENT

The accent rests on—

(1) The penultimate syllable when it is long ; i.e. has a long vowel or two consonants. *ki'ta:ibun, ya'ku:nu.*

(2) On the antepenultimate when it is long and the penultimate short ; when a word has three short syllables. *'ka:tibun, 'kataba.*

(3) On the long syllable before the antepenultimate when the penultimate and the antepenultimate are both short *mu'ka:tabatun* ; on the first syllable if there is no such long vowel *'katabatuhuma:.*

Note that monosyllables and the definite article which are joined in writing to the following word do not affect the accent.

*wa-'kataba ; al-'madadu*

## NUMBERS

The figures are read from left to right and are combined as in English :—

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	١٠

$$١٧٨٩ = 1789$$

Letters, when used as numbers, follow the order of the Hebrew alphabet, those peculiar to Arabic coming last, they represent the units, tens, hundreds, and a thousand. They are divided into these barbarous words :—

اِجْد هوز حطى كَلَن سَعْفَص قَرَشْت تُخَذ ضَنْغَف

Usually a line is drawn over the number.

$$\overline{\text{غَضَعْد}} = 1874$$

## EXERCISE IN READING

كَانَ خَمَّارٌ يُسَافِرُ بِخَمْرٍ لَهُ وَمَعَهُ قِرْدٌ وَكَانَ يَمْزُجُ  
 الْخَمْرَ بِالْمَاءِ نِصْفَيْنِ وَيَبِيعُهُ بِسِعْرِ الْخَمْرِ وَالْقِرْدُ  
 يُشِيرُ إِلَيْهِ أَنْ لَا تَفْعَلْ فَيَضْرِبُهُ فَلَمَّا فَرَغَ مِنْ يَبِيعِ  
 الْخَمْرِ وَأَرَادَ الرُّجُوعَ إِلَى بَلَدِهِ رَكِبَ الْبَحْرَ وَقِرْدُهُ  
 مَعَهُ وَخَرَجَ فِيهِ ثِيَابُهُ وَالْكَيْسُ الَّذِي جَمَعَهُ مِنْ ثَمَنِ  
 الْخَمْرِ فَلَمَّا سَارَ فِي الْبَحْرِ اسْتَخْرَجَ الْقِرْدُ الْكَيْسَ  
 مِنْ مَوْضِعِهِ وَرَقِيَ الدَّقْلَ وَهُوَ مَعَهُ حَتَّى صَارَ فِي  
 أَغْلَاهُ وَرَمَى إِلَى الْمَرْكَبِ بِدِرْهَمٍ وَإِلَى الْبَحْرِ  
 بِدِرْهَمٍ فَلَمْ يَزَلْ ذَلِكَ دَابَّةً حَتَّى قَسَمَ الدَّرَاهِمَ  
 نِصْفَيْنِ.

## Phonetic Transcription

ka:na xamma:run yusa:firu bixamrin lahu wamaʕahu  
 qirdun waka:na yamzuju l(xamra bilma:i nisfayni  
 wayabi:ʕuhu bisiʕri l(xamri walqirdu yufi:ru pilayhi ʔan  
 la: tafʕal fayadribuhu falamma: faraya min bayʕi l(xamri  
 waʔarada rruju:ʕa ʔila: baladihi rakiba lbaʕra waqirduhu  
 maʕahu waxurjun fi:hi ʕiya:buhu walki:su llaði jamaʕahu

min ʔamani lʔamri falamma: sa:ra fi lbaʔri staxraja  
 lqirdu lki:sa min mawḏiʔihi waraʔiya ddaqpla wahuwa  
 maʔahu ḥatta: ʔa:ra fi: ʔaʔla:hu warama: ʔila lmarkabi  
 bidirhamin waʔila lbaʔri bidirhamin falam yazal ḏa:lika  
 daʔbahu ḥatta: qpsama ddara:hima nisfayni.

### Translation

a wine merchant used to travel in wine he had and a monkey was with him. He mixed the wine with water half and half and sold it at the price of wine. The monkey signed to him ; don't do that, so he beat it. When he had finished selling the wine and wanted to go back to his town, he rode on the sea having with him the monkey and saddle-bags in which were his clothes and the purse which he had collected from the price of the wine. When he was well at sea, the monkey pulled the purse from its place and climbed the mast, it being with him, till he reached the top. He threw one dirham into the ship and one into the sea and that continued to be his practice till he had divided the dirhams into two halves.

## LESSON I

### NOUN AND ARTICLES

The distinction between a definite and an indefinite noun is fundamental.

The indefinite article *n* is put at the end of the noun, is not expressed by a consonant, but is indicated in one class of nouns by nunation. For inflection the noun falls into four classes but, as two of them are indeclinable, they cannot be called declensions. This lesson deals with one class only.

نَهْرٌ *nahrūn* a river ; مَلِكٌ *malikūn* a king

The *u* is the nominative inflection.

One way of making a noun definite is to give it the definite article **الْ** *al*, which is written in front of the noun and joined to it. The vowel of the article is only a helping vowel, liaison, so in connected speech it is replaced by the final vowel of the preceding word. If the noun begins with a dental, sibilant, *r*, *l*, or *n*

ن ل ظ ط ض ص ش س ز ر ذ ث ت

that letter assimilates to itself the *l* of the article in pronunciation though the *l* is still written. The assimilating consonant takes *shadda*. No noun can be both definite and indefinite at the same time, so nunation must be

dropped when the definite article is present. **الْبَيْتُ** *albaytu* the house ; **الْشَّمْسُ** *affamsu* the sun. Arabic uses

the definite article where English does not ; abstract nouns usually have it ; and it also indicates the class. 'Man is a reasoning animal' must be translated 'The man'.

An adjective, which qualifies a noun, follows it, agrees with it in gender (if it is singular), in case, and in definiteness.

بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ *busta:nun kabirun* a big garden.

الْبَحْرُ الْوَاسِعُ *albahṛulwasiʿu* the spacious sea.

The verbs 'is' and 'are' are not expressed ; so 'the man is handsome' is literally 'the man handsome'. Arabic grammar took its technical terms from logic, so 'the man' is subject and 'handsome' (the complement of the verb to be, as we call it) is the predicate. The subject must be

definite, unless the sentence is negative or interrogative, and the predicate must be indefinite.

الرَّجُلُ حَسَنٌ *arrajulu ḥasanun* the man is handsome.

الْبَحْرُ وَاسِعٌ *albahru wa:si'un* the sea is spacious.

Questions are asked by prefixing one of the particles <sup>ء</sup>ا or هَلْ *hal* to the sentence; <sup>ء</sup>a is connected with the word it precedes.

أَرَجُلٌ *ʔarajulun* . . . is a man . . . ?

هَلِ الْبَحْرُ وَاسِعٌ *halilbahru wa:si'un* is the sea spacious ?

<sup>ء</sup>a drives out the *alif* of the definite article ;

أَرَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ *ʔarrajulu ḥasanun* is the man handsome ?

### Personal Pronouns

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
3. Masc.	هُوَ <i>huwa</i>	هُمَا <i>huma</i> :	هُمْ - هُمْ <i>hum, humu</i>
Fem.	هِيَ <i>hiya</i>		هُنَّ <i>hunna</i>
2. Masc.	أَنْتَ <i>ʔanta</i>	أَنْتُمَا <i>ʔantuma</i> :	أَنْتُمْ <i>ʔantum</i>
			أَنْتُمْ <i>ʔantum</i>
Fem.	أَنْتِ <i>ʔanti</i>		أَنْتُنَّ <i>ʔantunna</i>
1. Com.	أَنَا <i>ʔana</i>		نَحْنُ <i>naḥnu</i>

Note.—أَنَا has two short syllables, in spite of the spelling. Arabic uses the second person singular. هُمْ humu and أَنْتُمْ antumu are used before liaison.

### Vocabulary 1

The words in brackets are the customary plurals which are all feminine. Five of the commonest plurals are indicated by letters from the second vocabulary onwards ; they are :

أَفْعَالٌ a — فُعُولٌ b — فَعَالٌ c — فُعْلٌ d — أَفْعُلٌ e

نَهْرٌ (أَنْهَارٌ) river, canal.	بَيْتٌ (بَيْوتٌ) house.
مَلِكٌ (مُلُوكٌ) king.	بَحْرٌ (بَحَارٌ) sea.
بُسْتَانٌ (بَسَاتِينٌ) garden.	رَجُلٌ (رِجَالٌ) man.
خُبْزٌ bread.	لَحْمٌ flesh, meat.
سَّارِعٌ (سَوَارِعٌ) street.	قَصْرٌ (قُصُورٌ) castle, palace.
إِنْسَانٌ (نَاسٌ) human being.	وَلَدٌ (أَوْلَادٌ) child, boy.
كَبِيرٌ big.	صَغِيرٌ little.
نَظِيفٌ clean.	وَسِخٌ dirty.
فَقِيرٌ poor.	غَنِيٌ rich.
حَسَنٌ good, beautiful.	فَئِيحٌ ugly, bad.
عَرِيزٌ wide.	حَبِيبٌ beloved, friend.
وَاسِعٌ spacious.	صَادِقٌ truthful.
طَيِّبٌ good. لَطِيفٌ gracious.	قَدِيمٌ old (of things).



## Exercise 1

نَهْرٌ كَبِيرٌ - الْمَلِكُ اللَّطِيفُ - الْبَيْتُ نَظِيفٌ - بُسْتَانٌ  
 حَسَنٌ - خُبْزٌ طَيِّبٌ - الرَّجُلُ الْفَقِيرُ - إِنْسَانٌ قَبِيحٌ -  
 اللَّحْمُ طَيِّبٌ - الشَّارِعُ عَرِيضٌ - أَنَا غَنِيٌّ - وَلَدٌ  
 وَسِخٌ - أَهْوٌ حَبِيبٌ - قَصْرٌ قَدِيمٌ - هَلْ أَنْتَ صَادِقٌ.

## Transcription

nahrūn kabīrun — almalikullatīfu — albaytu naḏīfun —  
 bustānun ḥasanun — xubzun ṭayyibun — arrajululfaqrū  
 — ʔinsānun qabiḥun — allaḥmu ṭayyibun — affa:riṣu  
 ʕariḏun — ʔana yaṇiyyun — waladun wasixun —  
 ʔahuwa ḥabībun — qasrun qadīmūn — hal ʔanta  
 saḍīqun.

## 2

a small house — the house is small — a poor man — the  
 friend is truthful — he is ugly — I am a man — you  
 (masc. sing.) are gracious — the spacious garden — a wide  
 river — the sea is beautiful — the ugly street — the little  
 boy is dirty — the bread is good.

## LESSON 2

## GENDER

There are two genders, masculine and feminine, so gender  
 is not co-extensive with sex as it is in English.

The commonest feminine ending is *at*, with case ending

and nunation, which is written with the dotted *h* هَ.

Some nouns and all the adjectives, which have so far been mentioned, form a feminine in this way; though most feminine nouns have no masculine correlative.

كَبِيرَةٌ *kabi:ratun* big;      مَلِكَةٌ *malikatun* queen;  
جَارِيَةٌ *jariyatun* girl;      قِطْعَةٌ *qitʕatun* piece.

Two nouns have *t* as feminine ending:—

بِنْتُ *bintun* daughter, girl;      أُخْتُ *ʔuxtun* sister.

Names of males are masculine even when they have the feminine ending. Otherwise all nouns with the feminine ending are feminine. Names of females, those of towns and countries and some collectives are feminine.

Some feminine nouns have no feminine ending: names of females:—

أُمُّ *ʔummun* mother;      عَرُوسٌ *ʕaru:sun* bride;  
عَجُوزٌ *ʕaju:zun* old woman;      أَتَانٌ *ʔata:nun* she ass.

Names of towns and countries:—

مِصْرٌ *misru*, Egypt, Cairo (no nunation);  
الشَّامُ *aʃʃa:mu*, Syria, Damascus.

Parts of the body which occur in pairs:—

يَدٌ *yadun* hand;      عَيْنٌ *ʕaynun* eye;

قَدَمٌ *qadamun* foot, leg ; رِجْلٌ *rijlun* foot, leg ;  
سَاقٌ *sa:qun* leg.

Some everyday words though no reason can be given :—

أَرْضٌ *arḍun* earth ; شَمْسٌ *samsun* sun ;

خَمْرٌ *xamrun* wine ; نَارٌ *na:run* fire ;

دَارٌ *da:run* house ; نَفْسٌ *nafsun* soul ;

رِيحٌ *ri:hun* wind ; سُوقٌ *su:qun* street of shops, bazaar.

The feminine ending has other uses. From collective nouns it forms a noun of unity, a singular :—

شَجَرٌ *šajarun* trees ; شَجَرَةٌ *šajaratun* a tree.

It forms emphatic nouns :—

عَلَّامٌ *ʿalla:mun* a learned man ; عَالِمَةٌ *ʿalla:matun*

very learned ; perhaps under this head comes خَلِيفَةٌ *xali:fatu*n deputy, caliph. (Other feminine forms are given in Lesson 10).

Vocative.—If the noun has the article, it is put in the nominative and أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكُ *ayyuhā al-malik* is prefixed ;

*ayyuhā l-maliku* O king ; before a feminine noun أَيَّتُهَا

*ḥayyatuha*: is used. If the noun stands alone, it is put in the nominative without nunation and the exclamatory

particle is **يَا** *ya*.

**يَا وَلَدُ** *ya: waladu* O boy ; **يَا جَارِيَّةُ** *ya: jar:riyatu* O girl. Proper names, which have the definitive article, lose it after *ya*; **يَا شَامُ** *ya: ša:mu* O Syria.

### Vocabulary 2

**جَارِيَّةُ** (جَوَارِي) <sup>1</sup> girl.

**مَدِينَةٌ** (d) town.

**أُمُّ** (أُمّهَات) mother.

**رِيحٌ** (c) wind.

**جَزِيرَةٌ** (جَزَائِرُ) island.

**أَرْضٌ** (أَرْضُونَ) earth, land.

**شَجَرٌ** (a) trees.

**جَدِيدٌ** new.

**بَعِيدٌ** far, distant.

**حَارٌّ** hot.

**طَوِيلٌ** long, tall.

**بِنْتُ** (بَنَاتٌ) daughter.

**رِجْلٌ** (e) foot, leg.

**قَدَمٌ** (a) foot, leg.

**أُخْتُ** (أُخَوَاتٌ) sister.

**دَارٌ** (دَوَارٌ) house.

**عَجَازٌ** (عَجَائِزُ) old woman

**سُوقٌ** (a) market.

**نَارٌ** (نيرانٌ) fire.

**شَمْسٌ** sun.

**شَيْخٌ** (b) old man, chief.

**شَدِيدٌ** strong, violent.

**قَرِيبٌ** near.

**عَزِيزٌ** mighty.

**نَفْسٌ** (b) soul.

**عَيْنٌ** (b) eye.

**سَاقٌ** (سَيِّقَانٌ) leg, stalk.

**خَلِيفَةٌ** (خُلَفَاءُ) deputy, caliph.

<sup>1</sup> Plurals of this form are explained in Lesson 26; till then there is no need to use them.

## Exercise 3

جَارِيَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ - أُخْتُ كَبِيرَةٍ - الْمَدِينَةُ نَظِيفَةٌ - الْأُمُّ  
 حَسَنَةٌ - دَارٌ جَدِيدَةٌ - الرِّيحُ شَدِيدَةٌ - عَجُوزٌ صَادِقَةٌ -  
 الشَّيْخُ الطَّوِيلُ - السُّوقُ بَعِيدَةٌ - الشَّجَرَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ -  
 جَزِيرَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ - هَلِ الْبِنْتُ حَبِيبَةٌ - الشَّمْسُ حَارَةٌ -  
 يَا وَلَدُ - أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكَةُ الْعَزِيزَةُ - أَرْضٌ قَرِيبَةٌ -  
 أَنْتِ غَنِيَّةٌ .

## Transcription

ja:riyatun ṣayīratun — ʔuxtun kabīratun — almadi:natu  
 naḍī:fatu — alʔummu ḥasanatun — darun jadī:datun —  
 arriḥu šadi:datun — ʕajūzun ṣadiqatun — affayxutṭa-  
 wi:lu — assu:qu baʕī:datun — affajaratu ṣayīratun —  
 jazīratun wa:siʕatun — halilbintu ḥabībatun — affamsu  
 ḥa:rratun — ya: waladu — ʔayyatuhalmalikatulʕazi:zatu  
 — ʔarḍun qri:batun — ʔaʔanti yaniyyatun.

## 4

the hot sun — the island is distant — a tall mother —  
 the big (elder) sister — the old woman is kind — the fire  
 is hot — the powerful chief — the house is new — the  
 ancient palace — is she poor ? — you (fem. sing.) are kind.

## LESSON 3

## CASE

There are three cases ; the familiar names, nominative, accusative, and genitive fit them well though the use of the accusative and genitive is wider than in English. Nouns of both genders which have nunation, have three case endings : *u* nominative, *a* accusative, and *i* genitive. Indefinite masculine nouns add *alif* to the accusative unless the word ends in *ʔ* preceded by *al*. This *alif* is a letter of prolongation and is due to the fact that in Mecca a final *an* was often pronounced *al*.

	Nominative.	Accusative.	Genitive.
moon	قَمَرٌ <i>qamarun</i>	قَمَرًا <i>qamaran</i>	قَمَرٍ <i>qamarin</i>
	القَمَرُ <i>alqamaru</i>	القَمَرَ <i>alqamara</i>	القَمَرِ <i>alqamari</i>
clothing	كِسَاءٍ <i>kisaʔun</i>	كِسَاءَ <i>kisaʔan</i>	كِسَاءِ <i>kisaʔin</i>
garden (now paradise)	جَنَّةٌ <i>jannatun</i>	جَنَّةً <i>jannatan</i>	جَنَّةٍ <i>jannatin</i>
	الْجَنَّةُ <i>aljannatu</i>	الْجَنَّةَ <i>aljannata</i>	الْجَنَّةِ <i>aljannati</i>

Construct state.—When one noun governs another in the genitive, the first is said to be in the construct state. The governing noun comes first and loses nunation :

بَيْتُ رَجُلٍ *baytu rajulin* a house of a man ;

بَيْتُ الرَّجُلِ *bayturrajuli* the house of the man.

The second noun being definitive makes the first definitive also. Most Europeans find it hard to accustom themselves to this. The first noun, being definitive by position, does not need and cannot have the definitive article.

Nothing can come between the construct and its genitive ; hence the name. An adjective agreeing with the first noun must come after the second. If the construct is definite, the adjective must be definite also ; there is only one way of making an adjective definite, giving it the definite article.

شَعْرُ الْبِنْتِ الْجَمِيلِ

*šaṣrulbintiljami:lu* the beautiful hair of the girl.

دَارُ الْبِنْتِ الْجَمِيلَةِ is ambiguous if the vowels are not added as the feminine adjective may refer to either noun.

A sentence like ' a house of the man ' cannot be translated directly into Arabic, you must go a roundabout way :

بَيْتٌ لِلرَّجُلِ *baytun lirrajuli* a house (belonging) to the man. (Another mode of expression in Lesson 19.)

Emphasis.—' The house is big ' may be translated in two ways :—

كَبِيرٌ الْبَيْتُ *albaytu kabi:run.*

إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ *ṭinnalbayta kabi:run.*

To an Arab the second is slightly more emphatic than the first but it is a degree of emphasis which cannot be

represented in English. *Pinna* puts the subject into the accusative but it is best left untranslated. A degree of emphasis, which can be translated, is got by using *Pinna* with the particle *la*. This *l* also appears in the definite article and in some demonstrative pronouns.

إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ لَكَبِيرٌ

*Pinnalbayta lakabi:run* the house is indeed big.

This *la* must not be confused with the negative *la*.

Prepositions. (For a full list see Lesson 36.)

All prepositions, with one partial exception, govern the genitive. Those, which consist of one consonant, are written as one word with the word they govern.

بِ *bi* by, with ; لِ *li* to, for ; كَ *ka* as, like.

After *li* the *alif* of the definite article is omitted and, if the noun begins with *l*, the *l* of the article also.

بِالْيَدِ *bilyadi* by the hand ; بِاللَّيْلِ *billayli* by (the) night ;

لِلْمَلِكِ *limalikin* to a king ; لِلْمَلِكِ *lilmaliki* to the king ;

لِلْبَنِّ *lillabani* for the milk.

There is no verb 'have' ; the idea is expressed by a preposition. 'The man has a book' can be said in three ways with shades of meaning :—

لِلرَّجُلِ كِتَابٌ *lirrajuli kita:bun* (the fact of possession).

عِنْدَ الرَّجُلِ كِتَابٌ	<i>ṣindarrajuli kita:bun</i>	} he has it on him.
مَعَ الرَّجُلِ كِتَابٌ	<i>maṣarrajuli kita:bun</i>	



The subject can be indefinite because the predicate is a prepositional phrase.

God. **إِلَٰه** or **إِلَه** *ṭilāḥun* god (pl. **آِلِهَة** *ṭa:liḥatun*)

**أَلِلَٰه** *alṭilāḥu* is sometimes used for *God* but usually it is shortened to **اَللّٰهُ** *allaḥu*. Note the spellings **بِاللّٰهِ** *billāḥi* and **لِلّٰهِ** *lillāḥi*.

**مِنْ** *min* of, from becomes **مِنَ** *mina* before the definite article and **مِنِ** *mini* in any other liaison.

With **مِنْ** *min* and **عَنْ** *ʿan*, the *n* is assimilated to the *m* of a following monosyllable ; **مِمَّنْ** *mimman*, from whom ; **مِمَّا** *mimma:*, from what. After **لِ** *li*, **مَا** *ma:* is often shortened ; **لِمَا — لِمَ** *lima* or *lima:*, for what, why.

### Vocabulary 3

**بَابُ** (a) door, chapter.

**كِسَاءُ** (أَكْسِيَّةُ) clothing, covering.

**مِفْتَاحُ** (مَفَاتِيحُ) key.

**لِسَانُ** (أَلْسِنَةٌ) tongue.

**رَفِيقُ** (رُفَقَاءُ) companion.

**حَفَظَ** keeping (abstract noun).

**عِزٌّ** might.

**حِكْمٌ** (حِكْمَةٌ) wisdom, wise saying.

**تَاجِرٌ** (تُجَّارٌ) merchant.

(d) book. كِتَابٌ

(c) shade, shadow. ظِلٌّ

light. خَفِيفٌ

noble, generous. كَرِيمٌ

opened, open. مَفْتُوحٌ

( سَبَايِكُ ) window. سَبَاكٌ

(a) lock. قُفْلٌ

(b) face. وَجْهٌ

(حِرَّانٌ) protected alien, جَارٌ

neighbour.

(d) road. طَرِيقٌ

safety. سَلَامَةٌ

(b) head. رَأْسٌ

fear. مَخَافَةٌ

(b) courtyard, dish. صَحْنٌ

(a) hair. سَعْرٌ

beautiful. جَمِيلٌ

heavy. ثَقِيلٌ

(a) noble. سَرِيفٌ

no, not. لَا

## Exercise 5

بَابُ بَيْتٍ - بَابُ الْبُسْتَانِ - سَبَاكُ الدَّارِ مَفْتُوحٌ -  
 إِنَّ الْأَرْضَ وَاسِعَةٌ - الْقَبِيلَةُ غَنِيَّةٌ - هَلِ الْكِتَابُ  
 لِمَنْتِ الشَّيْخِ - لَا هُوَ لِأَخْتِ التَّاجِرِ - شَارِعُ  
 الْمَدِينَةِ عَرِيضٌ - صَحْنُ بَيْتِ الْمَلِكِ الْكَبِيرِ - إِنَّ  
 مِفْتَاحَ الْبَابِ فِي الْقُفْلِ - إِنَّ كِسَاءَ الشَّيْخِ  
 نَظِيفٌ - إِنَّ وَجْهَ الْبِنْتِ حَسَنٌ - سَلَامَةٌ الْإِنْسَانِ  
 فِي حَفْظِ اللِّسَانِ - الْجَارُ قَبْلَ الدَّارِ وَالرَّفِيقُ

قَبْلَ الطَّرِيقِ - الْعِزُّ لِلَّهِ - رَأْسُ الْحِكْمَةِ مَخَافَةُ  
 اللَّهِ - الْخَلِيفَةُ ظِلُّ اللَّهِ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ.

### Transcription

ba:bu baytin — ba:bulbusta:ni — jubba:kudda:ri maftu:  
 ħun — ʔinnaḷḷarḍa wa:siyatun — alqubri:latu yaṇiyyatun —  
 ḥalilkita:bu libintiffayxi — la: huwa liʔuxtitta:jiri —  
 ʔa:riʕulmadi:nati ʕari:ḍun — spħnu baytilmalikilkabi:ru  
 — ʔinna mifta:ħalba:bi filqufli — ʔinna kisa:ʔaffayxi  
 naḍi:fun — ʔinna wajħalbinti ħasanun — sala:mtulʔinsa:ni  
 fi: ħafḍillisa:ni — alja:ru qḥbladda:ri warrafi:qu qḥblatṭo:  
 ri:qi — alʕizzu lilla:hi — raʔsulħikmati maxa:fatulla:hi —  
 alxali:fatu ḍillulla:hi ʕalalʔarḍi.

### 6

a royal garden — the strength of a man is in the tongue  
 — the beautiful face of the beautiful girl — the key of the  
 door is heavy — the little house is in the shade of a big  
 tree — a (the) good companion is the beginning of safety  
 on the road — the merchant is the strength of the land —  
 the little book is indeed light — the girl has light clothing  
 and the old woman heavy clothing.

## LESSON 4

### NUMBER

There are three numbers, singular, dual, and plural.

The dual is formed by cutting off the case ending from  
 the singular and adding أَنِ a:ni for the nominative and  
أَيْنِ ayni for the accusative or genitive. There is no

nunation. When a noun has only one form for these two cases, it is convenient to call it the oblique case.

عَيْنٌ *ʿaynūn* eye, spring (of water) ; عَيْنَانِ *ʿayna:ni* :

عَيْنَيْنِ *ʿaynayni*.

قِطْعَةٌ *qiṭʿatun* piece ; قِطْعَانِ *qiṭʿata:ni* ; قِطْعَتَيْنِ *qiṭʿatayni*.

The construct state is made by cutting off the *ni* :—

عَيْنَا الْبِنْتِ *ʿaynalbinti* the (two) eyes of the girl. The *a:* is shortened in liaison.

عَيْنَيِ الْبِنْتِ *ʿaynayilbinti*. The diphthong resolved in liaison.

Plural.—There are two ways of forming the plural, the sound or external and the broken or internal.

The external plural of nouns with the feminine ending is made by lengthening the *a* before the *t* which is then written as *t*, not as *h* with dots.

خَادِمَةٌ *xa:dimatun* maid servant ; خَادِمَاتُ *xa:dima:*

*tun*, maids. This plural has two cases, *u* for the nominative, *i* for the oblique. It takes nunation.

Masculine plural.—Most participles and a few nouns make an external plural by cutting off the case ending and adding *u:na* for the nominative and *i:na* for the oblique case. There is no nunation. Note the alternation of vowels in the dual and the masculine plural.

خَادِمٌ *xa:dimun* servant ; خَادِمُونَ *xa:dimu:na* ;

خَادِمِينَ *xa:dimi:na*.

The construct state is formed by cutting off *na*.

خَادِمِي الطَّيِّبِ خَادِمُو الطَّيِّبِ *xa:dimu#vbi:bi*

*xa:dimi#vbi:bi* the servants of the doctor. The long vowels are shortened in liaison. Adjectives agreeing with the external masculine plural usually take the external plural themselves.

Broken plural.—Nearly all masculine and many feminine nouns use the broken plural. This is made by a change in the word. No rules can be given for the simplest nouns and the plural must be learnt with the singular, it is all memory work. Many nouns have more than one plural; as a rule one form is the favourite or one form may be allotted to a special meaning.

عَبْدٌ *ʿabdun* slave, servant; عِبِيدٌ *ʿabi:dun* slaves;

عِبَادٌ *ʿiba:dun* slaves of God, worshippers, men.

*All.* There is no adjective meaning *all* which has to be expressed by كُلٌّ *kullun*, totality. Of course, this governs the genitive.

كُلُّ رَجُلٍ *kullu rajulin* every man;

كُلُّ الرِّجَالِ *kullurrija:li* all the men.

As the accusative is the adverbial case so:—

كُلَّ يَوْمٍ *kulla yawmin*, every day, daily;

كُلَّ الْيَوْمِ *kullalyawmi* all day long.

وَ *wa* 'and' is written with the following word. It was

enough for the Arabs to join two contrasting phrases by 'and' where we must use 'but'.

### Vocabulary 4

قِطْعَةٌ (قِطْعٌ) piece.	صَاحِبٌ (a) companion, master, owner.
خَادِمٌ (خَدَامٌ) servant.	طَبِيبٌ (أَطْبَاءُ) physician.
نَجَّارٌ carpenter.	خَبَّازٌ baker.
فَرَّاشٌ domestic servant.	طَبَّاخٌ cook.
خِثَّاطَةٌ sempstress.	خِثَّاطٌ tailor.
حُجْرَةٌ (حُجَرٌ) room.	أُذُنٌ (a) ear.
فَرَسٌ (a) horse, mare.	بَقَّالٌ greengrocer.
لَاعِبٌ playing (participle).	حِمِيرٌ (حَمِيرٌ) donkey.
جَالِسٌ sitting.	مَشْغُولٌ busy, busied.
مُظِلٌّ giving shade, shady.	قَصِيرٌ short.
نَعَمْ yes.	غَنَمٌ sheep (collective).
كَثِيرٌ many, much.	قَلِيلٌ few.

### Exercise 7

هَلِ الْخَبَّازُ غَنِيٌّ - لَا هُوَ فَقِيرٌ - الْخَبَّازُونَ  
وَالنَّجَّارُونَ مَشْغُولُونَ - إِنَّ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ خَبَّازِينَ  
وَنَجَّارِينَ كَثِيرِينَ - الْعَيْنَانِ وَالْأُذُنَانِ فِي الرَّأْسِ -  
الْوَلَدَانِ لَا عِبَانَ - بَشَانِ لَا عِبَتَانِ - يَدَا الْوَلَدِ وَسِخْتَانِ -

الشَّيْخُ وَالْعَجُوزُ جَالِسَانِ عِنْدَ شَجَرَةٍ قَصِيرَةٍ وَمُظِلَّةٍ -  
 فَرَسَانِ وَحِمَارَانِ - إِنَّ أُخْتِي التَّاجِرِ فِي الْحُجْرَةِ  
 الصَّغِيرَةِ - هَلْ أَنْتُمَا صَادِقَانِ - نَعَمْ نَحْنُ صَادِقَانِ -  
 إِنَّ الْغَنَمَ الْقَلِيلَةَ لِصَاحِبِ الْبَيْتِ الصَّغِيرِ .

### Transcription

halilxabba:zu yaniyyun — la: huwa faqir:run — alxabba:zu:na wannajja:ru:na mafyulu:na — ʔinna filmadi:nati xabba:zi:na wannajja:ri:na kaθiri:na — alʕayna:ni walʔuduna:ni firraʔsi — alwalada:ni la:ʕiba:ni — binta:ni la:ʕibata:ni — yadalwaladi wasixata:ni — affayxu walʕajuzu ja:lisa:ni ʕinda ʕajaratin qosiratin wamuθillatin — farasa:ni wahima:ra:ni — ʔinna ʔuxtayitta:jiri filhujratisspyi:rati — hal ʔantuma: sp:diq:ni — naʕam naħnu sp:diq:ni — ʕinnalyanamalqpli:lata li:sp:hibilbaytis-spyi:ri.

### 8

the two doors of the house are open — he is the owner of two horses — she is the owner of a house and a garden in the town — the donkey is the poor man's horse — there are two doctors in the town — each room in the house has two windows — are you domestic servants? — no, we are cooks — two pieces of meat and much bread are in the house — the garden belongs to two friends of the king — they are busy sempstresses.

## LESSON 5

## BROKEN PLURAL

The commonest forms for the plural of short nouns are :—

أَفْعَالٌ — أَفْعُلٌ — فُعُلٌ — فِعَالٌ — فُعُولٌ — أَفْعَالٌ — examples have been given in the vocabularies to earlier lessons.

For some forms of the plural rules can be given.

أَصْدِقَاءٌ — صَدِيقٌ : فَعِيلٌ is a plural of أَفْعِلَاءٌ :

أَنْبِيَاءٌ prophet نَبِيٌّ : أَغْنِيَاءٌ — غَنِيٌّ

فُعَلَاءٌ is plural of فَعِيلٌ when it has become a noun:

شُرَكَاءُ partner شَرِيكٌ : أُمَرَاءُ prince, commander أَمِيرٌ

أَفْعِلَةٌ is plural of nouns with three consonants and a

long vowel in the second syllable : أَجْنِحَةٌ wing جَنَاحٌ :

أَرْغِفَةٌ loaf of bread رَغِيفٌ — أَطْعِمَةٌ food طَعَامٌ

أَعْمِدَةٌ pillar عَمُودٌ .

مَفْعَلَةٌ or مَفْعَلٌ is plural of مَفَاعِلٌ whatever the vowels may be :—

مَدْرَسَةٌ — مَكَاتِبُ school, office, library مَكْتَبٌ



school مَنَجَلٌ — مَسَاجِدُ mosque مَسْجِدٌ — مَدَارِسُ  
sickle أَقَارِبُ relative أَقْرَبُ. مَنَاجِلُ

مَفَاعِلُ is plural of nouns with four consonants, two syllables and a long vowel in the second whether they have the feminine ending or not. — مَفَاتِيحُ key مِفْتَاحٌ — صَنَادِيقُ box صُنْدُوقٌ — مَمَالِكُ slave مَمْلُوكٌ — تَصَاوِيرُ picture تَصْوِيرٌ.

فَاعِلٌ is plural of فَاعِلَةٌ and sometimes of فَوَاعِلُ صَاحِبَةٌ — فَوَاكِهُ fruit (considered as food) فَاكِهَةٌ — فَوَارِسُ rider فَارِسٌ — صَوَاحِبُ companion

فَعَائِلُ is plural of feminine nouns with three consonants and a long vowel in the second syllable.

— فَضَائِلُ virtue فَضِيلَةٌ — رَسَائِلُ letter رِسَالَةٌ — رَذَائِلُ vice رَذِيلَةٌ.

فِعْلٌ is plural of فِعْلَةٌ.

سِيرَةٌ - قِطْعٌ manner of walking,  
 piece قِطْعَةٌ  
 character سِيرٌ .

فُعْلَةٌ is plural of فُعْلٌ .

تُحَفٌ gift تُحَفَةٌ - رُكَبٌ knee رُكْبَةٌ .

All broken plurals are grammatically collective nouns in the feminine singular; consequently they may be construed with feminine singular adjectives.

نِسَاءٌ حَسَنَاتٌ or نِسَاءٌ حَسَنَةٌ fair women

رِجَالٌ كَبِيرَةٌ - كَبِيرُونَ - كِبَارٌ important men

كِبَارٌ is a broken plural of كَبِيرٌ generally used of persons.)

Second declension.—Several of the broken plurals end in *u* without nunation. These and similar nouns form the second declension which has two case endings, *u* for the nominative and *a* for the oblique, when they are indefinite. When definite, they have the three terminations of the first declension.

Nominative.

Accusative.

Genitive.

مَدَارِسُ

مَدَارِسَ

الْمَدَارِسُ

الْمَدَارِسَ

الْمَدَارِسِ

(The second declension has *a* in the oblique case while the sound feminine plural has *i*.)

All proper nouns, which end in ة, belong to the second declension.

Nouns which end in *a*:, whether written with *alif* or *y*, are indeclinable.

شَكْوَى complaint ; دُنْيَا world.

The *a*: in these words is a feminine ending which is spelt with *y*, unless the third radical is *y* when *alif* is used for variety. The same ending occurs in the 'relative adjective'.

### Vocabulary 5

مَطْبَخُ kitchen.

وَرِثَةُ ( وَرَثَةٌ ) heir.

حُرَّاسُ ( حُرَّاسٌ ) a guard, watch-ful.

دُكَّانُ ( دُكَّانٌ ) shop.

عَامُ general.

عَوَامُ ( عَوَامٌ ) the common herd.

حِنْطَةٌ wheat.

سَعِيرُ barley.

صَدْرُ (b) breast, chest.

أَصْبَعُ ( أَصَابِعُ ) finger.

مِرْفَقُ ( مِرْفَاقٌ ) elbow.

عُنُقُ (a) neck.

قَلْبُ (b) heart.

عُلَمَاءُ ( عَلَمَاءُ ) learned man.

عَقَّارِبُ ( عَقَّارِبٌ ) scorpion.

كَلْبُ (c) dog.

فَلَّاحُ peasant.

خَاصُّ special.

حَوَّاسُ ( حَوَّاسٌ ) the upper ten.

قَمْحُ wheat (ripe).

ذُرَّةُ millet, maize.

كَتِفُ (a) shoulder.

إِبْهَامُ ( إِبَاهِيمُ ) thumb.

ظَفَرُ (a) finger nail.

بَارِدُ cold.

## Exercise 9

الْأَقَارِبُ عَقَارِبُ - الْعُلَمَاءُ وَرَثَةُ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ - لِلنَّجَّارِ  
 شُرَكَاءُ - الْأَطْعِمَةُ عِنْدَ الطَّبَّاخِ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ -  
 شَبَائِكُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ كَثِيرَةٌ - إِنَّ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ مَدَارِسَ  
 كَثِيرَةً - هَلْ مَفَاتِيحُ الْمَدِينَةِ عِنْدَ الْحَارِسِ - لَا هِيَ  
 عِنْدَ الْأَمِيرِ - الشُّيُوخُ وَالْعَجَّازُ جَالِسُونَ [جَالِسَةً]  
 فِي ظِلِّ الْأَشْجَارِ - الْكِلَابُ كَثِيرَةٌ عِنْدَ قَبِيلَةٍ مِنْ  
 قَبَائِلِ الْعَرَبِ - إِنَّ رِذَائِلَ الْخَاصَّةِ فَضَائِلُ الْعَامَّةِ -  
 إِنَّ الْأَرْغِفَةَ مِنْ دَكَكِينَ الْخَبَّازِينَ - الْأَشْرَافُ  
 شُرَكَاءُ الْأَمْرَاءِ فِي حَفَظِ الْمُدُنِ - دَكَكِينَ  
 الْبَقَالِينَ فِي سُوْقٍ خَاصَّةٍ .

## Transcription

al<sup>2</sup>aqribu <sup>2</sup>aqp:ribu — al<sup>2</sup>ulama: <sup>2</sup>u wara<sup>2</sup>at<sup>2</sup>ul<sup>2</sup>anbiya: <sup>2</sup>i —  
 linnajja:ri juraka: <sup>2</sup>u — al<sup>2</sup>at<sup>2</sup>imatu <sup>2</sup>indatt<sup>2</sup>pbba:xi film<sup>2</sup>t-  
 baxi — fuba:bi:kulbaytilkabi:ri ka<sup>2</sup>θi:r<sup>2</sup>atun — <sup>2</sup>inna  
 filmadi:nati mada:risa ka<sup>2</sup>θi:r<sup>2</sup>atan — hal mafa:ti:hul-  
 madi:nati <sup>2</sup>indal<sup>2</sup>ħa:risi — la: hiya <sup>2</sup>indal<sup>2</sup>ami:ri —  
 affuyu:xu wal<sup>2</sup>a:ja: <sup>2</sup>izu ja:lisu:na [ja:lisatun] fi: ðillil<sup>2</sup>a-  
 jja:ri — alkila:bu ka<sup>2</sup>θi:r<sup>2</sup>atun <sup>2</sup>inda q<sup>2</sup>bi:latin min q<sup>2</sup>ba: <sup>2</sup>ilil-  
<sup>2</sup>arabi — <sup>2</sup>inna rada: <sup>2</sup>ilalxa: <sup>2</sup>s<sup>2</sup>pti fa<sup>2</sup>ð<sup>2</sup>p: <sup>2</sup>ilul<sup>2</sup>a:mmati —

ʔinnalʔaryifata min daka:ki:nilxabba:zi:na — alʔaʔfra:fu  
 ʔuraka:ʔulʔumara:ʔi fi: ʔaʔḍilmuduni — daka:ki:nulbaqqḥ:  
 li:na fi: su:qin xa:sṣṣṭin.

## 10

the farmers and merchants are the pillars of the land — the boy's fingers are dirty — the slaves are servants (of God) — wheat is the food of the nobles and barley the food of the poor — the owners of fine clothing are in king's palaces — Syrian fruits are good — the children of the nobles are in special schools — the girl's nails are clean but (and) the boy's nails are dirty — dogs are the watchmen of the Arabs — the winds on the islands are cold — the hearts of men are between the fingers of God.

## LESSON 6

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The independent personal pronoun can be used only in the nominative case. When a pronoun is in an oblique case, it is expressed by a suffix added to a verb, noun, or particle. The same suffixes are used for both the accusative and genitive except in the first person singular.

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
third masc.	هُ hu		هُمْ hum
third fem.	هَا ha:	هُمَا huma:	هُنَّ hunna
second masc.	كَ ka		كُم kum
second fem.	كِ ki	كُمَا kuma:	كُنَّ kunna
first	يَ or يَ ya, i:		نَا na:

As direct object appended to a verb the first person singular is *ni:*.

The suffixes are very like the independent pronoun but with *k* instead of *t* in the second person.

After *i* and *ay* the *u* of the third person becomes *i* by assimilation.

Before liaison *-hum* and *-kum* become *-humu:* and *-kumu:*.

For the first person singular *ya* is used after *i:*, *a:*, and *ay:*; everywhere else *i:* is used.

With nouns the suffixes are added to the construct state; that means that nunation is dropped and, of course, the *alif* of the masculine accusative. The *ni* of the dual and the *na* of the sound masculine plural are also dropped.

The *i:* of the first singular swallows up the case ending.

These suffixes make the noun definite so an adjective agreeing with it must be also definite. An adjective is defined by giving it the definite article.

قَدَمِي *qadamī*: my foot (all cases) كَلْبُهُ *kalbuhu* his dog (nom.).

جَارِهِ *jarīhi* his neighbour (gen.) وَلَدُهُ *waladahu* his son (acc.).

عَيْنَايَ *ʿayna:ya* my two eyes (nom.) أُذُنَيَّ *ʾudunayya* my two ears (oblique).

خَادِمِي *xardimiyya* my servants (all cases; the *u:* of the nominative is assimilated to the *y* of the suffix).

مَدْرَسَةُ مَدِينَتِهِ الْجَدِيدَةِ *madrasatuh madīnatih aljadīdah* The new school of (in) his town.

يَدِهِ الْقَوِيَّةِ *yaduh alqawīyah* his strong hand (gen.).

فَضَائِلُكُمْ الشَّرِيفَةِ *fada'ilukush sharīfah* your noble virtues (acc.).

These suffixes are added to prepositions. Note the following :—

	me	thee	him	them
لِ	لِي	لَكَ	لَهُ	لَهُمْ
بِ	بِي	بِكَ	بِهِ	بِهِمْ
مِنْ	مِنْـي	مِنْـكَ	مِنْـهُ	مِنْـهُمْ
عَنْ	عَنْـي	عَنْـكَ	عَنْـهُ	عَنْـهُمْ
إِلَى	إِلَى	إِلَيْـكَ	إِلَيْـهِ	إِلَيْـهُمْ

Note that before all suffixes except the first singular لِ becomes لَ.

Sometimes the object suffix cannot be appended to a verb so, as it cannot stand alone, it is added to *Piyya*: which has no meaning but serves as a base for the suffix.

إِيَّاهُنَّ - إِيَّايَ - إِيَّاكَ - إِيَّاهُ

The suffixes are also added to اِنَّ and particles like it.

اِنَّا or اِنَّنَا - اِنِّنِي or اِنْنِي but اِنْكُم - اِنَّهُ.

كَ as, like does not take suffixes ; the construct of the

noun مِثْلٌ *miθlun* 'likeness' is used instead, or the

compound كَمِثْلٍ *kamiθli*.

لَهَا أَجْنَحَةٌ مِثْلُ الْخَفَّاشِ they have wings like the bat.

(The feminine pronoun in *laha*: refers to a broken plural.)

Arabic is fond of bringing a word or phrase to the front and referring to it by a pronoun in the actual sentence. 'Zaid's native land is Egypt' can be translated literally:—

وَطَنُ زَيْدٍ مِصْرُ.

It is quite as likely to be:—

زَيْدٌ وَطَنُهُ مِصْرُ

Zaid, his native land is Egypt.

مِصْرُ هِيَ وَطَنُ زَيْدٍ

Egypt, it is Zaid's native land.

وَطَنُ زَيْدٍ هُوَ مِصْرُ

Zaid's native land, it is Egypt.

The difference between these modes of expression is less than it is in English.

بَعْضٌ *baʿḍun*, 'someone, some' (sing. or pl.). Usually with a following genitive.

بَعْضُ النَّاسِ فِي الْبَيْتِ وَبَعْضُهُمْ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ

Some of the folk are in the house and some (of them) in the garden.

شِعْرٌ لِبَعْضِ الشُّعْرَاءِ

A poem by some poet.



## Vocabulary 6

وَطَنٌ (a) native land.	شِعْرٌ (a) poetry, poem.
سَاعِرٌ (سُعْرَاءُ) poet.	قَوِيٌّ strong.
وَزَنٌ (a) weight.	قُوَّةٌ (قَوِيٌّ) strength.
سَرِيعٌ swift.	عَقْلٌ (b) reason, intelligence.
سَرَفٌ honour.	هِمَّةٌ (هَمَمٌ) care, anxiety.
لَبَنٌ (a) milk.	تَجَرِبَةٌ (تَجَارِبٌ) experience.
صَعِيفٌ weak.	كثْرَةٌ multitude, abundance
جَمَلٌ (c) male camel.	مَعْلُومٌ known.
نَاقَةٌ (نُوقٌ) female camel.	سَاءٌ (سَاءٌ) a sheep.
مَعَزٌ goats.	بَقَرٌ cattle (sing. بَقَرَةٌ).
تَوْرٌ (ثِيرَانٌ) bull.	خَيْلٌ horses, horsemen.
زَيْتُونٌ olives, olive trees.	جَوَامِيسٌ (جَوَامِيسٌ) buffalo.
زَيْتٌ olive oil, oil.	

## Exercise 11

يَدِي نَظِيفَةٌ - يَدَاكُمْ نَظِيفَتَانِ - أَفْرَاسُهُ الْحَسَنَةُ سَرِيعَةٌ -  
 زَيْدٌ بَنَتْهُ حَسَنَةٌ - إِنَّ بَقَرَهُ لَهَا لَبَنٌ كَثِيرٌ - وَزَنْبِي عِنْدَهُ  
 كَوْزَنٌ الْكَلْبِ - قُوَّةُ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي عَقْلِهِ وَلِسَانِهِ -  
 شُعْرَاءُ الْعَرَبِ وَفَوَارِسُهَا كَثِيرَةٌ - لَهُ وَلَدَانِ كَبِيرُهُمَا  
 قَصِيرٌ وَصَغِيرُهُمَا طَوِيلٌ - شَرَفُ الرَّجُلِ أَوْلَادُهُ

وَهَمَّتْهُ دَارُهُ وَجَارُهُ - أَشْعَارُكُمْ اللَّطِيفَةُ مَعْلُومَةٌ بَيْنَ  
النَّاسِ كِلَاهِمَا - لِصَاحِبِي الْفَقِيرِ حِمَارَانِ وَلِصَاحِبَتِي كُنَّ  
أَفْرَاسٌ كَثِيرَةٌ - صُنْدُوقُكَ الْكَبِيرُ خَفِيفٌ وَصُنْدُوقُهَا  
الصَّغِيرُ ثَقِيلٌ.

## 12

my wheat and my barley are in my big chests — her two hands are indeed clean — our native land is dear to us — boys, have you your books? — your gracious letters are in the keeping of my master — my two hands and my two feet — your sister and her maids are sitting beside my cook — their chiefs are masters of wisdom — the two hands and two eyes of the old woman are weak — the weight of a man is the weight of his intelligence — the wisdom of the chief is from the multitude of his experiences.

## LESSON 7

## VERB

The verb has no tenses. Apart from the imperative, there are two finite forms which denote respectively completed and incompleted action. It is convenient to call them the perfect and imperfect, some prefer perfective and imperfective, remembering that these terms do not mean what they mean in English. Normally the perfect indicates a finished and therefore past act while the imperfect denotes an unfinished and therefore present or future act. The simplest part of the verb is the third masculine singular of the perfect which is used as the name of the

verb ; we speak of the verb ' to write ', Arabs speak of *kataba* ' he wrote '.

The verb is highly developed but on lines foreign to us. By additions to the root modifications of the original meaning are expressed. The plain root is called the simple or first and the enlarged stems are also called by numbers.

It is convenient to call the vowel, which follows the second radical whether in the perfect or imperfect, the characteristic.

In this book a strong verb is one which comes from a root having three different radicals, neither of them being *ʔ*, *w*, or *y*.

### *Perfect of the Strong Verb, Stem I*

Before reading the following notes, study carefully the perfect in Table I.

The perfect is made by the addition of suffixes to the root. Those of the second person are the same as the endings of the personal pronoun, and closely resemble the pronominal suffixes.

In the third feminine singular and dual the *t* is the feminine *t*.

*a:* is the sign of the dual as in the nominative of the noun.

*u:* is masculine plural as in the external nominative plural of the noun. The *alif* following this *u:* has no meaning but is always written after a plural *u:* in the finite verb ; in some weak verbs it is useful for distinguishing the plural from the singular. It is dropped before a pronominal suffix.

In Stem I there are three classes of perfect فَعَلَ — فَعَّلَ

— فَعَّلَ ; the inflections are the same for all. فَعَّلَ are usually intransitive. Many verbs have more than one form.

هَلَكَ — هَلَّكَ he perished.

With verbs denoting a state, the perfect must be translated by the English present. شَبِعَ 'he is satisfied (with food)', i.e. he has eaten enough and now does not want to eat more.

The third person singular of the verb may contain its own subject. شَبِعَ 'he is satisfied', شَبِعَتْ 'she is satisfied' are complete sentences. You can also say, شَبِعَ زَيْدٌ 'Zayd is satisfied'; شَبِعَتْ زَيْنَبُ 'Zaynab is satisfied'. All other parts of the perfect or imperfect contain their subjects.

One grammar gives twenty-one rules for the agreement of subject and verb. You can write correctly if you remember this much :—

If the verb comes before the subject, it is third masculine singular unless the subject is a woman or women and follows the verb immediately when it is third feminine singular.

If the subject comes first, the verb agrees with it.

Other agreements are possible but not necessary.

دَخَلَ الرَّجُلُ الدَّارَ وَخَرَجَ مِنْهَا

The man went into the house and came out of it.

دَخَلَ الرِّجَالُ الْبَيْتَ وَخَرَجُوا مِنْهُ

The men went into the house and came out of it.

لَبِسَتِ الْعَجُوزُ ثِيَابَهَا وَخَرَجَتْ مِنْ حُجْرَتِهَا

The old woman put on her clothes and came out of her room.

لَعَبَتِ الْبَنَاتُ ثُمَّ رَجَعْنَ إِلَى بُيُوتِهِنَّ [بُيُوتِهِنَّ]

The girls played, then returned to their houses (home).

both  
right

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{كَتَبَ إِلَى أُخْتِهَا زَيْنَبُ} \\ \text{كَتَبَتْ إِلَى أُخْتِهَا زَيْنَبُ} \end{array} \right\}$	Zaynab wrote to
	her sister.

Arabic does not distinguish between being and becoming ;

thus لَبَسَ means both 'to wear clothes' and 'to put them on'.

The addition of pronominal suffixes makes no difference to the parts of the perfect except the second masculine plural and, sometimes, the second feminine singular.

The object suffix of the first person singular is *ni*.

كَتَبَهُ he wrote it ; بَعَثَنِي she sent me ;

دَخَلْتُمُوهُ you (pl.) entered it ; ضَرَبُوهُ they hit him ;

لَبَسْتِهِ you (fem. sing.) put it on, or لَبَسْتِهِ .

A nominal sentence begins with a noun.

A verbal sentence begins with a verb.

This distinction is important because some particles must be followed by a noun and others by a verb.

The verb comes first unless there is a reason for some other order. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Most verbs, which are transitive in English, are so in Arabic ; many, which are intransitive in English, are transitive in Arabic.

## Vocabulary 7

(The vowel after a verb is that of the imperfect; the noun is the infinitive.)

ضَرَبَ i. ضَرْبٌ hit, strike.

طَلَبَ u. طَلَبٌ seek, look for.

خَرَجَ u. خُرُوجٌ go, come out.

ذَهَبَ a. ذَهَابٌ go away.

كَسَرَ i. كَسْرٌ break.

بَعَثَ a. بَعْثٌ send.

سَمِعَ hear.

كَتَبَ u. كِتَابَةٌ write.

لَعَبَ play.

ذَكَرَ u. ذِكْرٌ remember, mention.

شَبِعَ be satisfied (with food).

كَلَامٌ speech, what is said.

جَبَلٌ (c) mountain.

فَهَمَ فهمٌ understand.

فَتَحَ a. فَتْحٌ open, conquer.

دَخَلَ u. دُخُولٌ enter.

رَجَعَ i. رُجُوعٌ return.

نَزَلَ i. نَزُولٌ come down, dis-  
mount, camp.

شَرَبَ شَرْبٌ drink.

قَطَعَ a. قِطْعٌ cut, cut off.

حَفِظَ حَفِظٌ keep, guard.

صَعِدَ صُعُودٌ go up.

صَرَخَ u. صَرَاحٌ cry for help

صَوْتُ (a) voice, noise.

لَبَنٌ (a) milk.

## Exercise 13

ضَرَبَ الشَّيْخُ رَأْسَ الْوَلَدِ - فَهَمَتِ الْعَجُوزُ كَلَامَ  
الْجَارِيَةِ - أَطْلَبْتُمْ طَعَامًا مِنَ الْمَطْبَخِ - طَلَبْتُ  
لَحْمًا مِنْ دُكَّانِ الْجَزَارِ - خَرَجَ الْأَوْلَادُ مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ

وَدَخَلُوا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ - ذَهَبَتِ الْخِيَّاطَاتُ مِنْ مَدِينَتِنَا  
 وَرَجَعْنَ إِلَى وَطَنِهِنَّ [وَوَطَنِهِنَّ] - يَا بَنَاتُ هَلْ  
 شَرَبْتُنَّ الْمَاءَ - بَلْ شَرَبْنَا اللَّبَنَ - هَلْ سَمِعْتُمَا أَصْوَاتَ  
 الطَّيْرِ عَلَى الشَّجَرِ - قَطَعْتُ اللَّحْمَ قِطْعًا صَغِيرَةً -  
 بَعَثْتَنِي أُمِّي إِلَيْكَ - نَزَلَ الرَّجَالُ مِنْ رَأْسِ  
 الْجَبَلِ وَفَتَحُوا الْمَدِينَةَ .

## 14

have you (sing. and plu.) written the letters? — the boy broke the dog's leg with a stone — they heard what the governor said and returned to their homes — the kings entered the land and conquered it — I opened the window and a dog came in — the guardians of the cattle have called for help; did you hear them? — the doctors amputated the man's hand and foot — did you go into the room? — girls, did you play with the big dog? — evil men cut off the ears of the cattle — you two girls, have you sent a present to your sister?

## LESSON 8

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

Read Table 1. The inflection of the imperfect is by prefixes and sometimes also by suffixes. The first radical has no vowel.

The prefixes denote the person except in the third

feminine singular and dual where the *t* is feminine. Elsewhere *ya* stands for the third person, *ta* for the second, *ʔa* for the first singular (cf. <sup>أَنَا</sup>) and *na* for the first plural (cf. <sup>نَحْنُ</sup>).

*a:* is again the sign of the dual; *u:* of the masculine plural (except in the first person); *-na* of the feminine plural (cf. <sup>أَنْتُنِ هُنَّ</sup> and <sup>كَتَبْنَ</sup>).

The imperfect has three forms <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> — <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> — <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> but the inflections are the same for all of them.

<sup>يَكْرُمُ</sup> <sup>كْرَمَ</sup> has the imperfect <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> (no exceptions)

<sup>فَعَلَ</sup> has the imperfect <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> (perhaps five exceptions)

<sup>يَغْضَبُ</sup> <sup>غَضِبَ</sup>

<sup>فَعَلَ</sup> has any of the three forms but <sup>يَفْعَلُ</sup> usually occurs when one of the second or third radicals is a guttural consonant.

The word <sup>سَوْفَ</sup> or the particle <sup>سَ</sup> is prefixed to the imperfect when it is desired to show that it refers to the future.

It suffers no change when pronominal suffixes are added to it. It often denotes an act growing out of another.

'He came out and looked' may be translated <sup>خَرَجَ يَنْظُرُ</sup> or <sup>خَرَجَ وَيَنْظُرُ</sup>.



The imperfect suggests a close connection of the two acts ;

خَرَجَ وَنَظَرَ suggests two unconnected acts. Thus the imperfect often refers to past acts, as in the preceding example, when the whole sentence refers to the past.

An imperfect linked to the main sentence by 'and' or a pronoun or by both indicates an attendant circumstance :

دَخَلَ وَهُوَ يَضْحَكُ he came in and he was laughing.

he came in laughing—while laughing.

### *Interrogative Adverbs*

أَيْنَ أَنْتَ where, whither ? أَيْنَ أَنْتَ where are you ?

أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُونَ where are you going ?

مِنْ أَيْنَ خَرَجُوا (from) whence ; مِنْ أَيْنَ where did they get out ?

كَيْفَ حَالُكَ how ? كَيْفَ how is your condition ? كَيْفَ how are you ?

كَيْفَ فَعَلَ رَبُّكَ how did your Lord act ?

These words make no change in the form of the sentence.

كَمْ how much ? how many ?

When it asks a question, it is followed by a noun in the accusative singular :—

كَمْ حُجْرَةٍ فِي الْبَيْتِ

how many rooms are in the house ?

كَمْ إِنْسَانًا فِي الْجَمَاعَةِ

how many persons are in the company ?

بِكَمْ دِينَارًا الثَّوبُ

for how many dinars is the costume ?

When exclamatory, it is followed by the genitive of a singular or of a broken plural ; if there is a verb, it is in the perfect.

كَمْ كَأْسٍ شَرَبْتُ - كَمْ كُوْوسٍ

what a lot of cups I have drunk !

In both usages, كَمْ may be followed by مِنْ with a genitive :—

كَمْ مِنْ حُجْرَةٍ فِي الْبَيْتِ

how many rooms in the house ?

### Vocabulary 8

نَظَرَ u. نَظَرَ look at, see.

غَضِبَ غَضِبَ be angry.

فَعَلَ a. فَعَلَ do, act.

جَمَعَ a. جَمَعَ collect (trans.).

سَبَحَ a. سَبَحَ swim.

عَدُوٌّ (a) enemy.

شِتَاءٌ winter.

صَفٌّ (b) row, rank.

جَيْشٌ (b) army.

بَلَدٌ (c) town.

كَأْسٌ (b) (fem.) cup.

دِينَارٌ (دَنَانِيرُ) dinar, gold coin

(Latin denarius).

ثَوْبٌ (c) piece of cloth, clothing.

كَرَامَةٌ be noble, generous

صَحَكَ صَحَكَ laugh.

صَنَعَ a. make, do.

صَيْفٌ summer.

جَلَسَ i. sit.

خَشَبٌ wood.

قَدِمَ advance, arrive.

بِلَادٌ (بُلْدَانٌ) country.

نَجَّحَ a. bark.

جَمَاعَةٌ party, company.

طَبْلٌ (b) drum.

## Exercise 15

دَخَلَ الْأَوْلَادُ الْبَحْرَ يَسْبَحُونَ - بَعَثَ النُّجَّارُ إِلَى  
يَطْلُبُ خَشَبًا - جَلَسْنَا عِنْدَ الْعَيْنِ نَشْرَبُ وَنَضْحَكُ -  
خَرَجَ أَمِيرُ الْجَيْشِ يَصْعَدُ فِي الْجَبَلِ وَيَنْظُرُ إِلَى  
صُفُوفِ الْعَدُوِّ - ذَهَبَ الرَّفَقَاءُ مِنَ الشَّامِ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ  
يَنْزِلُونَ كُلَّ لَيْلَةٍ فِي بَلَدٍ - إِنَّ النَّاسَ فِي الصَّيْفِ  
يَخْرُجُونَ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ الْحَارَّةِ وَيَنْزِلُونَ فِي بِلَادِ  
قَرِيبَةٍ مِنَ الْبَحْرِ - قَدِمَ التَّاجِرُ مَدِينَةَ الْمَلِكِ يَجْمَعُ  
الدَّانَائِرَ مِنْ أَصْحَابِهِ - سَتَسْمَعُونَ صَوْتَ الطُّبُولِ.

God will conquer the town by (on) the hand of his prophet  
— the dogs came out barking — men wear heavy clothes  
in winter — you sat down and listened to the words of the  
poet — do the girls make their clothes? — the king

strikes good dinars — the children went out to play — the army advanced beating their drums — the carpenter made cups of wood for us to drink from — we heard the watchmen calling for help against the enemy — I looked at him and he was angry at what I had said.

## LESSON 9

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

The letters *ð*, *h*, *l*, *k* have demonstrative force, the pronouns are compounded from them. We have already met *l* in the definite article and the emphatic *la*.

This. The simplest pronoun is *ða:* but more common is the compound *hā:ða:* which is usually written هَذَا or هَـذَا.

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
masc.	هَذَا	هَذَانِ	هَـذَئِینْ
fem.	هَذِیْ. هَذِوْ.	هَتَانِ	هَتِیْنْ

The inflections of ذَا can be found by cutting off the prefix *ha:*.

That.

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
masc.	ذَاكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَئِیکَ
fem.	تَاكَ	تَانِکَ	تِیْنِکَ

More common in the singular are ذَئِیکَ (masc.) تِئِیکَ (fem.).

A demonstrative pronoun precedes its noun and, as it is by nature definite, the noun must be definite also.

هَذِهِ الدَّابَّةُ this messenger ; هَذَا الرَّسُولُ riding beast.

But if the noun has a pronominal suffix, the demonstrative follows it.

قُوتُكَ هَذَا this your food = this food of yours.

If the noun is indefinite you have a sentence :—

هَذَا قَلَمٌ this is a (reed) pen ; تِلْكَ أَمَةٌ that is a slave girl.

When the predicate of a sentence is definite, the pronoun of the third person is put between the demonstrative and the predicate.

ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْحَكِيمُ

that is the doctor (literally, wise man).

هَذِهِ هِيَ الضَّيْعَةُ this is the village (estate).

أُولَئِكَ هُمُ أَصْحَابُ الْحُكُومَةِ

those are the members of the government.

In sentences like these, the demonstrative is a nominative absolute and the real sentence is the personal pronoun plus the predicate. It is a mistake to say that the personal pronoun takes the place of the copula 'is', 'are'.

Interrogative pronouns.

مَنْ 'who?' مَا 'what?' These are indeclinable.

مَا when combined with the preposition لِ is often abbreviated لِمَا or لِمَ.

مَنْ أَلَوَّكِلُ who is the agent ?

مَنْ صَرَخَ who shouted for help ?

مَنْ ذَكَرْتَ whom did you mention ?

لِمَنِ الْجَوْهَرُ whose is the jewel ?

لِمَ نَظَرْتَ إِلَيْهَا for what (why) did you look at her ?

مَا and مَنْ are also used as indefinite pronouns and then they behave like conditional particles.

أَيُّ آيَةٍ 'which of' is always followed by a genitive or a pronominal suffix.

أَيْتُكُمْ صَعِدَ فِي رَأْسِ الْمَنَارَةِ

which of you went up to the top of the minaret ?

### Vocabulary 9

مَشْهُورٌ well known, famous.

حُكُومَةٌ government.

فِرَاشٌ (d) bedding, furniture

صَفِيْعَةٌ (c) estate, village.

(i.e. cushions and rugs).

قُوتٌ (a) food.

أَهْلٌ (أَهَالٍ) family.

إِمَاءٌ (أَمَاءٌ) slave girl.

وَكَيْلُ (وَكَلَاهُ) agent, man of business.      مَنَارَةٌ (مَنَارُ) lighthouse, minaret.

جَهْلٌ ignorance.      دَوَابٌّ (دَابَّةٌ) riding animal.

مَدْخَلٌ (مَدَّاحِلٌ) entrance.      قَلَمٌ (a) reed pen.

فِئْتَةٌ silver.      حَكِيمٌ (حُكْمَاءُ) wise man.

صِرَاطٌ path.      ذَهَبٌ gold.

حَدِيدٌ sharp.      مَالٌ (a) wealth, property, money.

عَسِيرٌ difficult.      مَخْرَجٌ (مَخَارِجُ) exit.

قَبِيلَةٌ (قَبَائِلُ) tribe.      وَرَقٌ (a) leaf, paper.

قَوْلٌ (a) speech, word, what is said.      سَيْفٌ (b) sword.

يَسِيرٌ few, easy.

### Exercise 17

هَذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ هُمَا شَيْخَا الْقَبِيلَةِ - هَذِهِ هِيَ  
الْأَمَةُ الصَّادِقَةُ - ضِيعَتِي هَذِهِ مَشْهُورَةٌ فِي الْبِلَادِ -  
تَلْعَبُ هَذِهِ الْبَنَاتُ فِي صَحْنِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ - نَزَلَ أَوْلَايْكَ  
الرِّجَالُ عِنْدَ مَدْخَلِ الْبَلَدِ - سَمِعْتُ كَلْبَكَ ذَلِكَ  
يَنْبَحُ - هَذَا فِرَاشُكَ - لِمَنْ هَذِهِ الْجَوَاهِرُ - هِيَ  
لَوْكِلِ صَاحِبِ الضِّيعَةِ هَذِهِ - أَوْلَايْكَ إِمَامٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ

الشَّيْخُ - مَنْ صَنَعَ كُؤُوسَكَ وَصُحُونَكَ تِلْكَ - مَنْ  
بَعَثَ إِلَيَّ - مِنْ قَوْلٍ مَنْ هَذَا .

## 18

short poems are the well-known ones — I am angry at what you have done — that agent has much silver and gold — whose is that estate? — the watchman went up the minaret of that mosque and raised the alarm (cried for help) — the children will write on that paper with these pens — that poor friend of yours has gone away to look for food — this agent of yours has collected much wealth — the leaves of these trees are food for sheep — escape (exit) from his ignorance is hard for the ignorant — my wealth is my sword and my books.

## LESSON 10

## ADJECTIVES

Some of the common adjectival forms have already been mentioned.

فَعِيلٌ is often passive in meaning : قَتِيلٌ killed.

فَاعِلٌ the active participle is often used as an adjective

or noun : عَادِلٌ just ; شَاهِدٌ a witness, martyr.

مَفْعُولٌ the passive participle is used as an adjective :

مَشْهُورٌ famous.



فَعُولٌ is intensive. جَاهِلٌ ignorant ; جَهُولٌ very ignorant ; كَاذِبٌ untruthful كَذُوبٌ a great liar ; كَسُولٌ very lazy.

فَعْلَانُ (without nunation) the feminine is فَعْلَى :  
 غَضَبَانُ - غَضِبَى angry ; تَعَبَانُ - تَعَبَى tired ;  
 كَسَلَانُ - كَسَلَى lazy.  
 أَفْعَلٌ has two meanings.

1. It denotes colours and bodily defects :—

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Plural
black	أَسْوَدُ	سَوْدَاءُ	سُودٌ
white	أَبْيَضُ	بَيْضَاءُ	بَيْضٌ
red	أَحْمَرُ	حَمْرَاءُ	حُمْرٌ

The dual of the feminine changes the final *p* into *w* ;  
 سَوْدَاوَانِ two black (women).

2. The elative, the 'adjective of superiority'. Arabic has only one form which does duty for both our comparative and superlative, it denotes intensity, the quality of the simple adjective raised to a higher power. The form is :—

Masculine.

أَفْعَلُ

Feminine.

فُعْلَى

Plural.

فُعْلٌ

Roughly, when this form is indefinite, it is comparative ; when it is definite, it is superlative.

When indefinite or when defined by a following genitive or pronominal suffix, the masculine is used for both genders and all numbers. When defined by the article, it is inflected for both gender and number. Of course, it is always inflected for case.

'Than' is expressed by مِنْ.

big كَبُرُ كُبْرَى أَكْبَرُ كَبِيرُ

الرَّجُلُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ وَلَدِهِ

the man is bigger than his son.

دَارِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ دَارِهِ

my house (fem.) is bigger than his.

شَوَارِعُ الْعَاصِمَةِ أَنْظَفُ مِنْ شَوَارِعِ الْقَرْيَةِ

the streets of the capital are cleaner than those of the village.

هُوَ الْأَطْوَلُ فِي أَهْلِهِ

he is the tallest in his family.

هُوَ أطولُ الْجَمَاعَةِ

he is the tallest of the party.

هِيَ أَطْوَلُهُنَّ ذِرَاعًا

she is the longest of them as to arm  
= she has the longest arm of any.

هِيَ الطُّوْلَى ذِرَاعًا

she is the longest in arm.

When the second and third radicals are the same, the forms of the elative are :—

few	قَلِيلٌ	أَقْلَى	قُلَى	قُلٌّ
strong	شَدِيدٌ	أَشَدُّ	شُدَى	شُدٌّ

To make the elative from adjectives denoting colours or bodily defects, an adjective meaning 'strong' in the elative is used with the noun denoting the colour. The noun is in the accusative.

هَذَا أَشَدُّ بَيَاضًا مِنْ ذَلِكَ

this is more white than that.

There are two irregular elatives.

خَيْرٌ as a noun means any sort of 'goodness' and, as an adjective, 'better,' 'best.'

شَرٌّ as a noun means any sort of 'badness' and, as an adjective, 'worse,' 'worst.'

Feminines of the form فَعْلَاءُ belong, of course, to the second declension with only two case endings and those of the form فَعْلَى are indeclinable (Lesson 5).

## Vocabulary 10

لَوْنٌ (a) colour, course (at a meal).	نَوْمٌ sleep.
زَهْرٌ (b) flower.	أَسْتَرٌ brown.
مُصِيبَةٌ (مَصَائِبُ) calamity.	نَخْلٌ sing. نَخْلَةٌ palm tree.
صَلَاةٌ (صَلَوَاتُ) prayer, the Muslim form of worship.	حُمْرَةٌ redness.
مَوْهَبَةٌ (مَوَاهِبُ) gift.	زُرْقَةٌ blueness.
ذِرَاعٌ (e) forearm, arm, cubit.	يَاضٌ whiteness.
تَمْرٌ dates, sing. تَمْرَةٌ.	أَخْضَرٌ green, dark coloured.
خَضَرَةٌ greenness, being a dark colour.	أُطْرَشٌ deaf.
صُفْرَةٌ yellowness.	أَخْرَسٌ dumb.
سَوَادٌ blackness.	أَحْدَبٌ hunch-backed.
أَزْرَقٌ blue.	حَلَوٌ sweet.
أَصْفَرٌ yellow, pale.	أَعْوَرٌ one-eyed.
	أَعْرَجٌ lame.
	مُرٌّ bitter, sour.

## Exercise 19

كَذَّبِكَ ذَلِكَ أَيَضٌ - هَذَا الْفَرَسُ أَسْوَدٌ - الْعَبْدُ  
 الْأَسْوَدُ فِي الْحُجْرَةِ الْحُمْرَاءِ - هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةُ خَضْرَاءُ  
 فِي الصَّيْفِ - عَيْنَا الْبِنْتِ زَرْقَاوَانٍ - الصِّرَاطُ أَحَدٌ  
 مِنَ السَّيْفِ وَأَدَقُّ مِنَ الشَّعْرِ - لَوْنُ هَذَا الزَّهْرِ مَا

هُوَ - لَهُ لَوْنَانِ أَزْرَقُ وَأَصْفَرُ - إِنَّ أَوْرَاقَ الشَّجَرِ سَمْرَاءُ  
 وَحُمْرَاءُ فِي الْخَرِيفِ - الذَّهَبُ أَثْقَلُ مِنَ الْفِضَّةِ -  
 الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ - خَيْرُ الْمَوَاهِبِ الْعَقْلُ وَشَرُّهُ  
 الْمَصَائِبُ الْجَهْلُ - الْأَمَةُ الْخُرْسَاءُ هِيَ الْحُسْنَى -  
 بِنْتِي أَطْوَلُ مِنْي .

## 20

he has some deaf black slave-girls — our army is smaller in number (fewer) than that of our enemies — the sheep in the land of the Arabs are black — the food most dear to the Arabs is the two blacks, meat and dates — the palm is taller than the olive — your estate is smaller than mine — this bird has a yellow breast and red wings — my friends sent me many presents but (and) your present is the best — God sent his prophet to all men, the black, the white, and the red — your youngest (smallest) sister is the kindest of them.

## LESSON 11

## IRREGULAR NOUNS

Three nouns are half way to having three radicals:—

(إِخْوَانٌ - إِخْوَةٌ) أَخٌ 'father': (آبَاءٌ) أَبٌ

'brother': (أَحْمَاءٌ) حَمٌ 'husband's father'.

There is nothing peculiar about them when they have one of the articles:—

: الْأَخُ - الْأَخُ - أَبَا - أَبَا - أَب - أَب

Of course these forms are rare.

In the construct state the final vowel is lengthened :

أَبَا - أَبِي - أَبُ

and the dual is أَبَوَيْنِ 'two parents' أَبَوَانِ

The pronominal suffixes are added to the construct state:—

أَبَاهُ 'his father' (acc.) أَبُوكَ 'your father' (nom.)

أَبِي 'my father' (all cases) أَبِيهِ 'his father' (gen.) but :

أَبُو زَيْدٍ 'Zayd's father'. أَبُ الْمُلُوكِ 'the father of kings':

When a man has a son, he is known not by his own name but as the father of his son.

ذُو 'possessor of' occurs only in the construct state:—

Sing.		Dual.		Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
nom. ذُو	ذَاتُ	ذَوَا	ذَوَاتَا	ذَوُو	ذَوَاتُ
acc. ذَا	ذَاتَ	ذَوَاتِي ذَوَاتِي ذَوِي ذَوِي			
gen. ذِي	ذَاتِ				

ذُو is never used with suffixes : it often takes the place of an adjective :—

ذُو عِلْمٍ 'learned', 'a learned man'.

ذُو عَقْلٍ 'intelligent' : ذَاتُ مَالٍ 'rich', 'a rich woman'.

سَنَةٌ 'year' has two plurals سَنَوَاتٌ and سَنُونٌ ; the oblique case of the latter is سَنِينَ with assimilation.

فَمٌ 'mouth' is regular but in the construct فَا—فُو

— فَاهُ—فُوهُ may also be used ; with suffixes : فِى

— فِىهِ but فِى 'my mouth' (all cases).

A few nouns begin with liaison :—

ابْنٌ (أَبْنَاءُ) 'son' : ابْنَةٌ (بَنَاتٌ) 'daughter' :

اِثْنَانِ (masc.) 'two' : اِثْنَانٌ (fem.) 'two' : اِسْمٌ

(اَسْمَاءُ) 'name' : اِمْرَأَةٌ (نِسَاءٌ—نِسْوَةٌ) 'woman' :

اِمْرُؤٌ (acc.) اِمْرِئِ (gen.) 'man' اِمْرُؤٌ

اِمْرُؤٌ and اِمْرَأَةٌ drop the liaison after the definite

article and become *الْمَرْءُ* and *الْمَرْأَةُ*; the other nouns

keep the liaison: *الْأَبْنَةُ - الْأَبْنُ*.

*ابْنُ* has a sound plural *بَنُونَ* - *بَنِينَ* which is used

in the names of tribes: *بَنُو بَكْرٍ* 'the tribe Bakr'.

Note the following spellings:—

*بِسْمِ اللَّهِ* 'in the name of God'.

*زَيْدُ بْنُ مُحَمَّدٍ* *Zaydubnu muḥammadin*  
Zayd, the son of Muhammad.

*زَيْدُ ابْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ* *Zaydunibnu muḥammadin*  
Zayd is the son of Muhammad.

In the last example the connecting vowel *i* is not indicated in writing even in vocalized texts.

*كِلَا*; fem. *كِلْتَا* 'both' is used only in the construct state. With a suffix it is inflected for case like any dual, with a noun it is not.

### Vocabulary 11

*مَوْتُ* death.

*جَمَالٌ* beauty.

*نَزَعَ* i. *نَزَعٌ* take away.

*عَرَفَ* i. *مَعْرِفَةٌ* know.

*جَدٌّ* (a) grandfather.

*عَمٌّ* (a) paternal uncle

*عَمَّةٌ* paternal aunt.

*مَطَرٌ* rain.



هَوَاءٌ air.

شِمَالٌ north.

مَسْرُقٌ — سَرَقٌ east.

سَهْرٌ (b — e) month.

نَهَارٌ day, daylight.

جِدَارٌ (d) wall.

قَلْبٌ (b) heart.

نَجَحَ a. نَحَّاحٌ succeed.

تَبَعَ and VIII follow.

جَدَّةٌ grandmother.

حَالٌ (a) maternal uncle.

حَالَةٌ maternal uncle.

نَوْءٌ (a) storm.

نَسِيمٌ (c) breeze.

جَنُوبٌ south.

مَغْرِبٌ — غَرْبٌ west.

دَقَائِقُ (دَقِيقَةٌ) minute

طَهْرٌ (b) back.

ظَهْرٌ noon.

## Exercise 21

سَمِعَ أَبِي وَأَخُوكَ أَصْوَاتَ الدَّوَابِّ - طَلَبْتَ ابْنَةَ  
 أَبَاهَا فِي السُّوقِ - جَمَعَ الشَّيْخُ أَبْنَاءَهُ عِنْدَ فِرَاشِهِ  
 قَبْلَ الْمَوْتِ - نَزَعْتَ ابْنَةَ الْبَقَالِ الْأَوْرَاقَ الْبَيْضَاءَ  
 مِنْ يَدِ أَخِيهَا - دَخَلْتَ الْمَرْأَةَ مَعَ أَبْنَائِهَا بَيْنَ يَدَيِ  
 الْخَلِيفَةِ - يَا أَبْنَاءَ هَلْ تَعْرِفُونَ أَسْمَاءَ الزُّهُورِ - نَعَمْ  
 نَعْرِفُ أَسْمَ كُلِّ زَهْرٍ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ - تَبِعْتُ أَخَاكَ  
 فِي الطَّرِيقِ أَكْتُبُ اسْمَهُ عَلَى جِدَارِ كُلِّ بَيْتٍ -

إِنَّ أَبَوَيْكَ يَفْرَحَانِ عَلَيَّ نَجَاحِكَ - الْمَرْءُ بِأَصْغَرِيهِ  
 قَلْبِهِ وَلِسَانِهِ - جَمَالُ الْمَرْءِ فِي لِسَانِهِ وَجَمَالُ  
 الْمَرْأَةِ فِي عَقْلِهَا.

## 22

do you and your brother understand what I have said ? — my two brothers and two sisters play with your brothers and sisters — did your father send your brother to me ? — the woman sent her sons to seek wealth in distant lands — what is your name ? my name is well known, it is the best known of the names of the Arabs — woman, have you any children ? — yes I have a son and two daughters — this man has two fathers, the father of his body and the father of his intelligence — did you stop at the house of my friend's father ? — the possessors of knowledge and wealth are the fewest of men.

## LESSON 12

## IMPERATIVE. PARTICIPLES. INFINITIVE

The imperative (Table 1), being a command, is an incomplete action and so connected with the imperfect. It has no prefixes and the inflections are cut short. The loss of the prefix makes a helping vowel necessary ; this is *u* when the characteristic is *u* and otherwise *i*.

اُكْتُبْ write ; اِسْمَعْ hear ; اِضْرِبْ hit.

The imperative is confined to the second person and is affirmative only ; a negative command is expressed differently.

It can take the object suffixes.

The active participle is **فَعَّالٌ** and **فَعْلَةٌ** ; **كَاتِبٌ** are common forms for the plural.

When derived from a transitive verb, it can take an object and, being a noun, it takes its object in the genitive case :—

**زَيْدٌ قَاتِلُ زَيْدٍ** Zaid's murderer ;

**طَالِبُو عِلْمٍ** seekers after knowledge, scholars.

It is obvious that this participle easily passes into a noun or adjective.

The passive participle is **مَكْتُوبٌ** : the plural is **مَفَاعِيلُ**.

In themselves the participles contain no idea of time.

Infinitive.—There is no fixed form for the infinitive of the simple stem ; **فَعْلٌ** is common but the infinitive of each verb has to be learnt.

Many verbs of motion have the form **فُعُولٌ** :—

**ذَهَابٌ** but **نُزُولٌ** — **دُخُولٌ** — **خُرُوجٌ**.

**فَعْلٌ** usually has **فَعْلٌ** :—

**غَضَبٌ** be angry — **فَرَحٌ** rejoice **فَرِحَ**

As the infinitive is a noun, it can govern a genitive which may be either subject or object of the verbal idea.

قَتْلُ زَيْدٍ the killing of Zaid.  
the killing by Zaid.

Therefore it is sometimes best translated as passive :—

إِنْ يُقْتَلُوا فَالْقَتْلُ أَكْرَمُ مِيتَةٍ

if they are killed, being killed is the noblest mode of death.

When both subject and object are mentioned, the subject is put in the genitive and the object in the accusative.

ضَرَبُ خَالِدٍ الْوَلِيدَ Khalid's hitting Waleed

بَعَثِي إِيَّاهُ my sending him.

The object can always be put in the accusative.

The object both of an infinitive or a participle is often introduced by **لِ** especially when the verbal noun is in the adverbial accusative.

قُمْتُ إِكْرَامًا لَهُ

I stood up to do him honour (Lesson 15).

The infinitive takes the place of the two English forms 'to write' and 'writing'.

It passes easily into an abstract noun and even into a concrete one.

وُجُودٌ existence (وَجَدَ 'find').

تَصْوِيرٌ picture (from a derived stem 'give shape to').

## Vocabulary 12

طِفْلٌ (a) infant.	أَنْفٌ (b) nose.
عَظِيمٌ glorious, great.	جُبْنٌ cheese.
أَمْرٌ (b) thing, affair.	سِرٌّ (a) secret.
سَهْلٌ level, easy.	أَمِينٌ faithful.
قَتَلَ u. قَتْلٌ kill.	أَمْرٌ (أَوْ أَمِرٌ) command.
حَدَمَ i.u. خِدْمَةٌ serve.	سَرَفٌ honour, nobility.
مَنْزِلٌ (مَنَازِلُ) مَنْزِلَةٌ - مَنْزِلٌ house,	كَتَمَ u. كِتْمَانٌ hide (trans.).
camp, stage (of a journey).	صَبْفٌ (a) guest.
غُلَامٌ (غُلَمَانٌ) young man,	عَذَابٌ punishment.
servant, boy.	حَدٌّ (b) cheek.
عَذَبَ II punish.	جَبْهَةٌ (c) forehead.
سَرَقَ i. سَرَقٌ steal.	جَفْنٌ (b) eyelid.
سَفَةٌ lip.	جَوَزٌ nut.

## Exercise 23

يَا نِسَاءَ أَسْمَعْنَ صَوْتَ أَطْفَالِكُنَّ - الدُّخُولُ فِي  
هَذَا الْأَمْرِ أَسْهَلُ مِنَ الْخُرُوجِ مِنْهُ - يَا خَادِمَةَ  
أَذْهَبِي إِلَى السُّوقِ وَاطْلُبِي مِنَ الْخِيَّاطَةِ ثِيَابِي  
الْجَدِيدَةَ - إِنَّ كَاتِمَ السِّرِّ صَدِيقٌ أَمِينٌ - فَتَحْ نَفْسِكَ  
هُوَ الْفَتْحُ الْعَظِيمُ - أَيُّهَا الْأَمِيرُ أَنْزِلْ مِنْ فَرَسِكَ

وَأَدْخُلْ مَنْزِلِي وَهَذَا لِي شَرَفٌ عَظِيمٌ - الْمَطْلُوبُ  
 مِنْكَ الرُّجُوعُ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ الْبَعِيدَةِ إِلَى بَيْتِ  
 أَبَوَيْكَ - الْمَخْدُومُ عِنْدَكُمْ هُوَ خَادِمُ كُلِّكُمْ - إِنَّا  
 لِلَّهِ وَإِنَّا إِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ - خِدْمَةُ الرَّجُلِ أَخَاهُ شَرَفٌ.

## 24

my daughter, hear what I say — seek knowledge from all, from men and women — entering into wealth is difficult and the going out from it easy — knowledge of yourself is the greatest knowledge and the most difficult — the king rejoiced at the return of his army after its defeat of his enemies — cutting off the hand is the punishment of the thief — the generous man rejoices at the arrival of guests — your keeping your tongue from evil is the fear of God — the object of my sending this young man to you is his entry into your service.

## LESSON 13

## MOODS

The perfect has only one form which serves for indicative, conditional, and optative.

The imperfect has three besides the indicative (Table 1).

Subjunctive.—This is a suitable name for this mood usually follows a subordinating conjunction. The *u* of the indicative is changed to *a*; the *ni* and *na* of the two syllabled inflections are cut off; while the feminine plurals are not changed.

It is used after the conjunctions *لِ* and *كَيْ*, in order

that ' and also after أَنْ when that follows a verb expressing any sort of wish or purpose.

طَلَبَ مِنِّي أَنْ أَذْهَبَ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ

he sought from me that I should go to Jerusalem.

أَنْ with the subjunctive can always be replaced by an infinitive :—

طَلَبَ مِنِّي اذْهَابَ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ

Jussive.—This is formed by dropping the inflection *u* of the indicative ; in other places it is the same as the subjunctive.

It gets its name because it provides the imperative for the first and third persons and the negative imperative for the second :—

اُكْتُبْ write ; لَا تَكْتُبْ do not write ;

لِيَكْتُبْ let him write ; لَا يَكْتُبْ let him not write.

As a positive imperative the jussive always takes the prefix ل ; after وَ and فَ the ل loses its vowel.

وَلْيَكْتُبْ and let him write.

The jussive has other uses which have nothing to do with the imperative.

Energetic.—Roughly speaking, it is formed by adding *anna* to the indicative ; but the individual forms must be learnt.

With the emphatic **لَ** it is used in solemn statements, especially after oaths. It is also used to express commands and wishes.

**قَدْ حَلَفَ لَيَقْتُلَنَّ** he had sworn, he will kill.

Note.—Arabic has no strict rules for indirect speech as have English and Latin.

Conditional sentences.—The conjunction is **إِنْ** 'if'; either the perfect or the jussive may be used in both parts of the sentence.

**إِنْ فَعَلْتَ هَذَا هَلَكَتَ** } if you do this, you will  
**إِنْ تَفْعَلْ هَذَا تَهْلِكُ** } perish.

**إِلَّا** 'if not' is often contracted to **إِنْ لَا**.

**مَنْ** and **مَا**, when indefinite pronouns, are often treated as conditional particles :—

**مَنْ سَكَتَ سَلِمَ** he who keeps silent is safe.

### Vocabulary 13

**حَلَفَ** i. swear.

**كَشَفَ** i. uncover, disclose.

**مَسَحَ** a. measure.

**مَزَارِعَ** (مَزَارِعُ) field.

**سُهِدَ** be present at.

**مَرَضَ** (a) illness.

**نَدِمَ** repent.

**حَيَاةَ** life.



سَكَتَ u. سَكُوتٌ be quiet.	عَيْتَ (b) fault, defect.
شَجَاعٌ bold	مَرِيضٌ (مَرَضَى) ill, sick.
سَمٌ (b) poison.	فَرِيْسَةٌ prey.
سَقَطَ u. سَقُوطٌ fall.	سَلَامٌ سَلِيمٌ be safe
بَدَوٌ bedouins, nomads.	شَجَاعَةٌ bravery.
هَلَكَ i. هَلَكٌ perish.	حَطَبٌ firewood.
هَلَكَ perish.	ظَهَرَ a. ظُهُورٌ be manifest, con-
عَجَلَ عَجَلٌ hurry.	quer.
صَبَرَ i. صَبْرٌ be patient, endure.	بَدَوِيٌ a nomad.
كَرِهَ كَرَاهٍ be unwilling, not like.	

## Exercise 25

مَنْ يَعْجَلُ يَنْدَمُ - بَعَثَ الْحُكُومَةُ غُلَمَانَهَا لِيَمْسَحُوا  
 الْمَزَارِعَ - طَلَبَ مِثْيَى الطَّيِّبُ أَنْ أَشْرَبَ لَنَا  
 كَثِيرًا - إِنْ شَهِدْتَ الْحَرْبَ عَرَفْتَ أَيُّ الْجَيْشَيْنِ  
 أَشَجَعُ - لِيَنْزِعَ مِنْ فِيمَ الْأَسَدِ فَرِيْسَتَهُ لِنَعْرِفَ قُوَّتَهُ  
 وَشَجَاعَتَهُ - أَكْرَهُ أَنْ تَنْظُرُ إِلَى عِيُوبِ جِيرَانِكَ -  
 كَتَبَ الْخَلِيفَةُ إِلَى أَمِيرِ جَيْشِهِ لَا تَقْتُلِ الشُّيُوخَ  
 وَالْأَطْفَالَ وَلَا تَقْطَعْ الْأَشْجَارَ - إِنْ تَخْرُجَ مِنْ

هَذَا الْأَمْرِ تَفْرَحُ كُلُّ حَيَاتِكَ - مِنَ الشَّجَاعَةِ  
 أَنْ تَصْبِرَ عَلَى الْمَصَائِبِ وَالْمَكْرُوهِ - طَلَبَ  
 الْأَبُ حَكِيمِينَ لِيَكْشِفَا عَنْ مَرَضِ ابْنِهِ .

26

do not play with that sharp sword — I shall certainly discover his secret — let the youth be silent before one who is older than he — let me go into your house that I may look at your carpets — they broke the cup that the posion in it might fall to the ground — send the servant to gather the dates fallen on the ground — the women of the tribe go out every day to collect firewood — be not angry with a friend — it is part of nobility to disapprove of defects in oneself.

## LESSON 14

## NEGATIVES

There are several negatives, each with its special uses. The negative stands at the beginning of the sentence, except when it denies a single word.

إِنَّكَ عِنْدِي كَلَا شَيْءٍ

in my opinion you were as nothing.

لَا is 'no' and also 'not'.

A nominal sentence may be denied by مَا :—

مَا قَوْمٌ كَقَوْمِي

a tribe is not like my tribe—no tribe is like my tribe.

مَا هُوَ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ

it is not from the Book (Koran).

A general negation may be expressed by لَا 'which denies the class'; the noun loses nunation and is in the accusative :—

لَا رَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ no man is in the house.

If there are two clauses, the nominative may be used in both :—

لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا فَزَعٌ

no fear is on them and no terror.

The defective verb لَيْسَ 'it is not' has no imperfect.

لَيْسُوا — لَسْتُمَا — لَيْسَا — لَسْتُ — لَيْسَتْ — لَيْسَ —  
— لَسْنَا, etc., is followed by a noun in the accusative or by

ب with the genitive :—

لَسْتُ بِعَالِمٍ — لَسْتُ عَالِمًا I am not learned.

Sometimes it is reduced in meaning to 'not' :—

لَسْتُ أَقْصِدُ الْحَرْبَ I do not intend war.

Verbal sentences.—The past is denied by مَا with the perfect or by لَمْ with the jussive :—

لَمْ يَكْتُبْ — مَا كَتَبَ he did not write.

The future is denied by لَنْ with the subjunctive ; here the subjunctive stands in a main sentence.

لَنْ يَكْتُبَ he will not write — he will never write.

مَا with the imperfect denies the present :—

مَا يَكْتُبُ he is not writing (at the present moment).

لَا with the imperfect is a general negation and may refer to any time.

لَا يَكْتُبُ he does not write.

After another negative لَا may be used to continue a series of denials ; the time is that of the first.

لَمْ يَدْخُلِ الدَّارَ وَلَا نَظَرَ إِلَى شَيْءٍ فِيهَا  
he did not enter the house and did not look at anything in it.

لَا with the perfect denies a wish :—

لَا رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ may God not have mercy on him.

لَا after an oath denies the future :—

وَاللَّهِ لَا فَتَحْتُ هَذَا الْبَابَ

by God I will not open this door.

لَا with the jussive is a negative command as was said in the previous lesson.

لَمَّا with the jussive means 'not yet' :—

لَمَّا يَكْتُبُ he has not yet written (but still has time).

بَلْ introduces a correction :—

إِضْرِبْ زَيْدًا بَلْ زَيْنَبَ beat Zaid ; no, Zainab.

لَا تَضْرِبْ زَيْدًا بَلْ زَيْنَبَ do not beat Zaid but (beat) Zainab.

غَيْرٌ is a noun meaning 'change' ; in the construct state it means first 'other' and then 'not' :—

الْمُلُوكُ وَغَيْرُهُمُ the kings and others.

غَيْرُ الْعَرَبِ non-Arabs.

وَجْهُهُ إِلَى غَيْرِ مِصْرَ his face was not towards Egypt.

## Vocabulary 14

شَيْءٌ (أَشْيَاءُ no nunation) thing.	أَحَدٌ fem. إِحْدَى one.
قَوْمٌ (a) people, tribe, some.	وَقْتُ (a) time.
فَرَعَ (فَرَعٌ) be afraid, seek refuge.	كَفٌّ restraint.
قَصَدَ i. قَصْدٌ aim at, purpose.	وَرَعٌ piety.
هَرَبَ u. هَرْبٌ run away.	حَزَنٌ حَزِنٌ be sorry.
سُغِلَ (a) work, labour.	رَحْمَةٌ رَحِمَ have mercy on.
حَدِيثٌ (أَحَادِيثٌ) story, report.	خَوْفٌ fear.
عِلْمٌ عِلِمٌ know.	خَبْرٌ (a) story, news.
فَقْرٌ poverty.	قَنَاعَةٌ قَنِعَ be content, satisfied.
حِرْصٌ greed.	بَلَاءٌ trial, misfortune.
أَسَدٌ (b) lion.	سَرَّةٌ greed.
حُسْنٌ goodness, beauty.	حَرٌّ heat.
سَمَاءٌ (سَمَوَاتٌ) sky, heaven.	تَدْيِيرٌ management.
	خَلْقٌ (a) nature, character.

## Exercise 27

لَا تَضْرِبُوا أَوْلَادَكُمْ - لَمْ يَبْعَثْنِي أَبِي لِأَطْلُبَ كِتَابًا  
لَكَ - لَنْ يَكْرُمَ مَنْ لَا يَكْتُمُ الْأَسْرَارَ - لَمْ نَسْمَعْ  
مِثْلَ هَذَا الْحَدِيثِ - اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ -  
لَا نَرْجِعُ مِنْ شُغْلِنَا فِي الْمَزَارِعِ وَالشَّمْسُ

فِي السَّمَاءِ - لَمْ تَفْرَحْ فِي هَذَا الْخَبَرِ وَلَا حَزِنًا -  
 لَا فَقْرَ وَلَا بَلَاءَ كَالْحَرِصِ وَالشَّرِّهِ وَلَا مَالَ  
 كَالْقَنَاعَةِ - لَا عَقْلَ كَالْتَّذِيرِ وَلَا وَرَعَ كَالْكَفِّ  
 وَلَا حُسْنَ كَحُسْنِ الْخُلُقِ - الْهَرَبُ فِي وَقْتِهِ خَيْرٌ مِنْ  
 الصَّبْرِ فِي غَيْرِ وَقْتِهِ - اِثْنَانِ لَا يَشْبَعَانِ طَالِبُ عِلْمٍ  
 وَطَالِبُ مَالٍ .

## 28

our enemies, may God not have mercy on them, are many — do not be afraid of work — the prophet never ate his fill of meat in his life — be not satisfied with a little knowledge — the days which have gone will never return — I do not seek gifts from the government to-day — do not take refuge with (إِلَى) another than God — do not laugh, my daughter, at the misfortune of the poor and be not angry at the success of the rich — he is the possessor of wealth, estates, and houses but (and) he is not yet content — you are not the possessor of wisdom.

## LESSON 15

## MORE ABOUT CASES

Accusative.—This is the adverbial case, for true adverbs are few.

Cognate accusative.—The infinitive, usually qualified in some way, carries on the idea of the verb :—

ذَهَبَ ذَهَابًا سَرِيعًا

he went off a quick going (quickly).

أَخَذْنَاهُمْ أَخْذَ عَزِيزٍ

we laid hold on them the laying hold of a strong one = we took a good grip of them.

The infinitive may be left out :—

أُذَكِّرُوا اللَّهَ كَثِيرًا remember God much (often).

Extensions of this construction are :—

ضَرَبْتُهُ مَرَّتَيْنِ I hit him twice.

ضَرَبْتُهُ سَوْطًا I hit him with a whip.

Accusative of reason or cause.—It is the infinitive of a verb of sensation or thought referring to the same time as the main verb :—

لَا تَقْتُلُوا أَوْلَادَكُمْ خَشْيَةَ إِمْلَاقٍ

do not kill your children from fear of poverty.

Accusative of extent in time or place.—All nouns of time may be used in this way :—

ذَهَبَ لَيْلًا he went away by night.

سَكَنَ فِي مَكَّةَ سِنِينَ [أَيَّامًا]

he dwelt some years (days) in Mecca.



For place only names of direction, measure, and general words can be used :—

ذَهَبَ مِيْلًا he went away a mile.

نَظَرَ يَمِيْنًا وَيَسَارًا [شَمَالًا] he looked right and left.

جَلَسْتُ مَجْلِسَ زَيْدٍ - جَلَسْتُ مَكَانَ زَيْدٍ

I sat in Zaid's place.

but جَلَسْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ I sat in the mosque.

Accusative of nearer definition.—This is used with weights, measures, verbs of filling and such like ; it is always indefinite :—

هِيَ أَطْوَلُهُنَّ ذِرَاعًا she was the longest of them in arm

رَطْلٌ عَسَلًا a *roll* of honey.

مَلَأَ الْكَيْسَ ذَهَبًا he filled the purse with gold.

Accusative of accompanying circumstance.—It is indefinite and English would use the nominative :—

قَدِمَ الرَّجُلُ رَاكِبًا the man advanced riding.

أَدْخُلُوا رَجُلًا رَجُلًا come in, one by one.

The accusative may refer to any part of the sentence :—

نَظَرْتُ إِلَى زَيْدٍ جَالِسًا

I looked at Zaid as he was sitting.

دَخَلْتُ الْبُسْتَانَ زَاهِرًا

I went into the garden when it was in bloom.

ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا رَاكِبَيْنِ

I hit Zaid when we were both mounted.

Genitive.—This is used more freely than in English ; possession is only one of the ideas expressed by it. Examples will make the usage clear.

رِطْلُ عَسَلٍ a *roll* of honey.

كُرْسِيٌّ خَشَبٍ a chair of wood.

سَمٌّ سَاعَةٍ poison of a moment (instantaneous).

‘ My knowledge ’ means ‘ what I know ’.

عِلْمِي means ‘ what I know ’ and ‘ what others know about me ’.

In technical terms the English genitive is subjective, the Arabic may be subjective or objective.

فَخَرْتُ بِأَيَّامٍ لِّغَيْرِكَ فَخَرُهَا

you boasted of days (battles) the boasting in which belonged to others.

We have just seen the genitive describing a noun ; it can also describe an adjective :—

قَلِيلُ الْعَقْلِ little of understanding, foolish.

In this construction the adjective, unlike the noun, can take the definite article :—

الْإِثْنَةُ الْحَسَنَةُ الْوَجْهَ the girl, the pretty of face.  
the girl with the pretty face.

الرَّجُلُ الْكَثِيرُ الْمَالِ the man the much of property.  
the rich man.

### Vocabulary 15

مَرَّةٌ (c) time (repetition).

يَوْمٌ (أَيَّامٌ) day (24 hours).

لَيْلَةٌ one night.

مَكَانٌ (أَمْكَنَةٌ) place.

كَيْسٌ (a) bag, purse.

سَاعَةٌ (سَاعَاتٌ) hour, moment.

سَكَنَ u. سَكُونٌ be quiet, dwell.

سَجَدَ u. سُجُودٌ bow down.

فَخَّرَ u. فَخْرٌ boast.

مَكَثَ u. مَكْثٌ stay, remain.

غَرَسَ i. غَرْسٌ plant.

حَرِيرٌ silk.

جَبِينٌ cowardice.

سَوْطٌ (a) whip.

لَيْلٌ (لَيَالٍ) night.

خَشْيَةٌ fear.

كُرْسِيٌّ (كُرَاسِيٌّ) chair.

أَلْبَارِحُ yesterday.

رَكَبَ رُكُوبٌ ride.

زَهَرَ a. زُهُورٌ bloom, shine.

قَعَدَ u. قُعُودٌ sit, stay at home.

غَرَبَ u. غُرُوبٌ be, go far off,

set (star).

صُوفٌ wool.

## Exercise 29

هُوَ أَصْفَرُ اللَّوْنِ - زَيْدٌ قَلِيلُ الْعَقْلِ وَعُمَرُ أَقْلُ الْعَقْلِ  
 مِنْهُ - الرِّيحُ الْيَوْمَ أَشَدُّ مِنْهَا الْبَارِحَ - هَرَبَ مِنْ  
 الْبِلَادِ خَوْفًا مِنْ غَضَبِ السُّلْطَانِ - ذَهَبَ يَمِينًا  
 وَيَسَارًا يَطْلُبُ طَعَامًا - مَكَثُوا غَيْرَ طَوِيلٍ - قَعَدْتُ  
 عَنِ الْحَرْبِ جُبْنًا - غَرَسَ الْفَلَّاحُونَ مَزَارِعَهُمْ  
 شَعِيرًا - أَنَا أَشَدُّ مِنْهُ خَوْفًا مِنْهُ مِنِّي - قَصَدْتُ  
 خِدْمَةَ كَبِيرٍ مِنَ الْكِبَارِ طَلَبًا لِلْمَالِ - فَرِحْتُ  
 وَأَكْتُمْتُ مَا بِي حَزَنًا عَلَى الْمَرِيضِ - سَجَدْتُ لِلَّهِ  
 فَرَحًا فِي بَعْثِهِ النَّبِيَّ.

## 30

she was much afraid — no one ran away as I did —  
 I lived in that town for many years — he has little money  
 but (and) is quite content in his poverty — the heat to-day  
 is greater than it was yesterday — he is as brave as a  
 lion — he is braver than a lion — he was silent for a long  
 time — I do not go to hot countries for fear of illness —  
 he wore garments of silk in his joy at having gathered much  
 wealth — he is strong in the arm and weak in the leg.

## LESSON 16

## WEAK—HOLLOW—VERBS

In these verbs (Tables 4—5) the middle radical is *w* or *y*. In the perfect the first radical has *a*: in an open syllable and *u* or *i* in a shut syllable according as the middle radical is *w* or *y*. Thus the perfect has only two syllables in place of the three of the strong verb.

In the imperfect the vowel after the first radical is long in an open and short in a shut syllable and is *u* or *i* as the middle radical is *w* or *y*.

In the jussive the forms with no final vowel have a shut syllable after the first radical, so the vowel in it is short.

The imperative is made as usual by cutting off the prefix of the jussive and what is left needs no helping vowel.

The active participle always has a glottal stop ; قَائِلٌ may come from the root *qwl* or *qyl*.

The passive participle is مَقُولٌ from *qwl* and مَقِيلٌ from *qyl*.

The infinitive is often فَعَلَ, i.e. قَوْلٌ and قَيْلٌ, but there are many exceptions.

There is also a special intransitive form corresponding to فَعِلٌ.

In this the long vowel of the perfect is *a*: and the short vowel always *i*. The vowel of the imperfect and its derivatives is *a*, long or short, as the syllable is open or closed.

The verb يَكُونُ - كَانَ 'become' takes the place of the missing 'be' when it is necessary to indicate past or future time :—

الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ the man is in the house.

كَانَ الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ the man was in the house.

يَكُونُ الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ the man will be in the house.

(A future particle is not needed, for the verb would not be used for the present.)

كَانَ is also an auxiliary verb ; the perfect of it is used with another perfect to express the pluperfect ; قَدْ is sometimes added.

مَاتَ الرَّشِيدُ بِطُوسَ وَكَانَ خَرَجَ إِلَى خُرَاسَانَ

Rasheed died in Tus and (after) he had gone to Khurasan.

The perfect is also used with an imperfect to denote an act repeated in the past :—

كَانَ يَرْكَبُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ عِدَّةَ مَرَّارٍ

he used to ride (rode) every day a number of times.

The imperfect with the perfect of another verb expresses the future perfect :—

يَكُونُ زَيْدٌ كَتَبَ Zaid will have written.

When it is an independent verb, the subject is in the nominative and the complement in the accusative :—

يَكُونُ الرَّسُولُ عَلَيْكُمْ شَهِيدًا

the apostle will be a witness against you.

كُونُوا حِجَارَةً أَوْ حَدِيدًا be stone or iron.

Peculiar is the construction—

مَا كَانَ لَ he is not the one to.

لَمْ يَكُنْ زَيْدٌ لِيَشْرَبَ خَمْرًا

Zaid was not the man to drink wine.

يَصِيرُ - صَارَ 'become' and other verbs also take the complement in the accusative.

قَدْ with the perfect shows that it has the sense of the English perfect or pluperfect :—

إِنَّ ابْنَتَكَ قَدْ مَاتَتْ

your daughter has died (is dead).

قَدْ أَمَرْتُ بِالْبُخْلِ أُمُّ مُحَمَّدٍ

Umm Muhammad (name of a woman) had given an order about stinginess ; had told me to be stingy.

قَدْ with the imperfect means 'sometimes' :—

قَدْ يَعْلَقُ الْقَلْبُ حُبًّا ثُمَّ يَتْرُكُهُ

the heart sometimes attaches itself to love, then leaves it.

The verb يَمُوتُ - مَاتَ 'die' is irregular ; in the perfect both مِتُّ and مِتُّ are possible.

## Vocabulary 16

قَصُرَ u. قَصْرٌ be short.	وَحْدَ (always with a suffix) alone
قَالَ u. قَوْلٌ say.	طَوَّلَ u. طَوْلٌ be long.
قَالَ i. قَيْلٌ take a siesta.	كَانَ u. كَوْنٌ become, be.
عُلِقَ u. عُلُوقٌ be attached to.	تَرَكَ u. تَرْكٌ leave.
صَارَ i. صَيْرٌ become.	مَاتَ u. مَوْتُ die.
قَامَ u. قِيَامٌ stand, stand up.	سَارَ i. سَيْرٌ go, travel.
عَادَ u. عَوْدٌ return.	خَافَ a. خَوْفٌ fear.
بَاعَ i. بَيْعٌ sell.	مَالَ i. مَيْلٌ incline.
عَدَدٌ number.	غَلَبَ i. غَلَبٌ overcome.
حَدِيدٌ iron.	بُخْلٌ avarice.
حُبٌّ love.	حَجَرٌ (a) stone.
حُجَّةٌ (حُجَجٌ) argument.	لُصٌّ (b) thief, brigand.
قَافِلَةٌ (قَوَائِلٌ) caravan.	حَبْلٌ (e) rope

## Exercise 31

مِنْ قَصُرَتْ حُجَّتُهُ طَالَ لِسَانُهُ - قُمْ يَا وَلَدِي وَسِرْ  
 إِلَى جَدِّكَ - كَانَ الْأَوْلَادُ تَلْعَبُ فِي الشَّارِعِ -  
 خَافَتِ الْجَارِيَةُ مِنْ شِدَّةِ الرِّيحِ - عَادَتِ الْقَافِلَةُ  
 خَوْفًا مِنَ اللُّصُوصِ - لَا تَخَافِي يَا بِنْتِي لَا  
 تَسِيرِينَ عَلَيَّ وَحْدِكِ - لِيَقُلْ مَا فِي قَلْبِهِ - كُنْتُ



أَبْنِ أَبِي ثُمَّ صِرْتُ أَبَا ابْنِي - إِنْ لَوْنُ الْحَيَّةِ خُضْرَةٌ  
 تَمِيلُ إِلَى السَّوَادِ - كَانَ الْبَدْوُ يَبِيعُونَ جُلُودَ الْغَنَمِ  
 وَالْمَعَزِ مِنَ الْفَلَاحِينَ - يَكُونُ الْجَيْشُ قَدْ غَلَبَ  
 عَلَى أَعْدَائِهِ قَبْلَ غُرُوبِ الشَّمْسِ.

## 32

he rose from his bed and the sun had inclined to its setting — if a chief of our people dies, a chief arises — the caravan will have travelled for many days — the whole company had heard what I was saying — everybody takes a siesta in the hot days of summer — many say other than what they think — do not fear the unpleasantnesses of the road — the woman had been making clothes for her children — the guests will not have risen from their beds before your departure — my grandmother, are you going with the other women to Jerusalem?

## LESSON 17

## STRONG VERB—DERIVED STEMS

The derived are formed from the simple stem (consult Table 2) by additions of various sorts and express some modification of the original verbal idea. It is the custom in European grammars to number them, the simple stem being I. They have each only one variety, unlike I, and

are made from **فَعْلَ** and **فَعِلَ فَعَلَّ**.

The inflections are the same as for the simple stem.

The derived stems fall into four groups determined by the vowel sequence in the imperfect.

## 1.

II is formed by doubling the second radical: كَتَبَ  
impf. يُكْتَبُ.

III by lengthening the first vowel: كَاتَبَ impf.  
يُكَاتِبُ.

IV by prefixing *ʔa* and dropping the vowel of the first radical: اُكْتَبَ impf. يُكْتَبُ.

The prefix of the imperfect has *u* and the characteristic is *i*. Note that in the imperfect of IV the *ʔ* is dropped though it reappears in the imperative, اُكْتُبْ.

## 2.

V is made by prefixing *ta* to stem II: تَكْتَبُ impf.  
يَتَكْتَبُ.

VI by prefixing *ta* to III: تَكَاتَبُ impf. يَتَكَاتَبُ.

The imperfect has the vowel *a* throughout, except of course in the final inflection.

## 3.

VII is made by prefixing *n* with liaison: اِنْكَتَبَ  
impf. يَنْكَتِبُ.

VIII by inserting *t* after the first radical; the form begins with liaison : **اِكْتَبَ** impf. **يَكْتِبُ**.

X by prefixing *sta* with liaison. This is really a form like VIII made from *saktaba* which does not occur in Arabic though it is found in other Semitic languages.

**يَسْتَكْتِبُ** impf. **اِسْتَكْتَبَ**

In this group the prefix of the imperfect has *a*, and the characteristic is *i*.

## 4.

IX and XI cannot be made from anything, which we should call a verb; they denote colours, and are best treated with the doubled verb.

Summary.—The perfects have *a* throughout, except of course in liaison.

If the imperfect has five syllables, the fourth has *a*.

Few verbs have all the nine stems.

In good Arabic VII is not made from roots beginning with *p*, *w*, *y*, *r*, *l*, and *n*.

In VIII partial or total assimilation occurs when the root begins with *t*, *θ*, *d*, *ð*, *z*, *s*, *ḏ* *t*, *ḏ*.

دَرَكَ	اِدَّرَكَ	overtake
ذَخَرَ	اِدَّخَرَ or اِذَّخَرَ	store up
زَحَمَ	اِزْدَحَمَ	crowd together
صَنَعَ	اِصْطَنَعَ	take into one's employment
ضَرَبَ	اِضْطَرَبَ	be confused

ضَجَعَ	إِضْطَجَعَ	or	إِضْجَعَ	lie down
طَلَعَ	إِطْلَعَ			know (survey from above)
ظَلَمَ	إِظْلَمَ	or	إِطْلَمَ	suffer wrong

Each stem has its own meaning or meanings.

II is

intensive : كَسَرَ break      كَسَّرَ smash

causative (this is an encroachment on IV) :

عَلَّمَ teach      عَلِمَ know

declarative : صَدَّقَ say that one  
speaks truth, believe      صَدَقَ speak truth

denominative : كَبَّرَ say, 'God is very great' (اللهُ أَكْبَرُ)

III is

conative : قَاتَلَ try to kill, fight      قَتَلَ kill

نَزَعَ take away      نَازَعَ try to take away,  
quarrel

It takes as direct object the indirect object of I :—

كَتَبَ write      كَاتَبَ correspond with

رَكَبَ ride      رَاكَبَ ride with (a person)

It is always transitive.

IV is

causative : جَلَسَ sit down أَجْلَسَ set down

V is the reflexive of II and then passive :

فَرَّقَ divide (trans.) تَفَرَّقَ scatter (intrans.)

VI is

reciprocal : ضَرَبَ hit تَضَارَبَ hit one another, have  
a free fight

pretence : نَعَسَ sleep تَنَاعَسَ pretend to sleep

VII is reflexive, then passive : اِنْكَسَرَ be broken

هَزِمَ defeat اِنْهَزَمَ let oneself be defeated

VIII is

reflexive (sometimes passive) :

جَمَعَ collect (trans.) اِجْتَمَعَ collect (intrans.)

X is to ask or think that the simple verbal idea should be done.

حَسَنَ be good اسْتَخْسَنَ think good, approve

غَفَرَ pardon اسْتَغْفَرَ ask pardon from (trans.)

It is almost causative :

خَرَجَ go out اسْتَخْرَجَ extract from a mine, make  
productive, till.

It takes considerable ingenuity to fit many verbs into this scheme ; thus كَلَّمَ speak to (trans.) تَكَلَّمَ speak (intrans.). Here are two sample roots :—

- |       |  |                 |   |
|-------|--|-----------------|---|
|       | خَلَفَ u. خَلْفَ   | سَلَّمَ سَلَامَ |   |
| I.    | remain behind  |                 | be safe, well   |
| II.   | خَلَفَ leave behind                                      | سَلَّمَ         | greet (denominative)<br>make safe, protect,<br>surrender (trans.) |
| III.  | خَالَفَ oppose   | سَالَّمَ        | make peace with,<br>treat peaceably                               |
| IV.   | أَخْلَفَ break (promise)<br>(make your word lag behind)  | أَسْلَمَ        | submit<br>turn Muslim   |
| V.    | تَخَلَّفَ hold back from                                 | تَسَلَّمَ       | receive the surrender,<br>turn Muslim                             |
| VI.   | تَخَالَفَ disagree with                                  | تَسَالَّمَ      | make peace together   |
| VIII. | اِخْتَلَفَ differ, be<br>different                       | اِسْتَلَمَ      | kiss (the Black<br>Stone)   |
| X.    | اِسْتَخْلَفَ appoint a<br>successor, take in<br>exchange | اِسْتَسْلَمَ    | submit<br>keep to the middle of<br>the road                       |

فَ 'and' denotes a closer connection than وَ and may often be rendered 'so', 'then'. In a conditional sentence it cannot be translated. Sometimes it denotes a change of subject.

## Vocabulary 17

فَرَّقَ u. i. فَرَّقَ separate.	هَزَمَ i. هَزَمَ defeat.
غَفَرَ i. غُفِرَانٌ cover, pardon.	بَلَغَ u. بُلُوعٌ arrive at.
صَرَفَ i. صَرَفَ turn (trans.).	VII turn away, go away.
نظر IV cause to wait.	VIII expect, wait for.
قَبِلَ قَبُولٌ receive.	IV go forward.
قَبِلَ III compare.	نَزَعَ III try to take away,
ضرب VIII be confused, in	quarrel.
commotion.	حَصَرَ III besiege.
زَحَمَ a. زَحَمَ push.	VIII crowd.
ذَخَرَ a. ذَخَرَ select.	VIII store up.
دَرَسَ u. دَرَسَ study.	II teach.
تَلَجَ (b) snow.	حَاجَةً need, business, thing.
عِيدٌ (a) festival.	حِصْنٌ (b) fortress.
علم II teach.	IV tell, make known.
V learn.	غَابَ i. غُيُوبٌ be absent.

## Exercise 33

كَلَّمْتُهُ وَلَمْ أَتَكَلَّمْ مَعَ غَيْرِهِ - أَطْعَمَ الْغَنِيُّ فَقَرَاءَ  
 كَثِيرَةً فَأَنْصَرَفُوا شَاكِرِينَ - لَا تُخَالِفُوا آبَاءَكُمْ يَا  
 أَيُّهَا الْأَوْلَادُ - كُنَّا نَتَّبِعُ الْفَلَاحَ وَأَنْفَرَدْنَا عَنْ  
 أَصْحَابِنَا - اِنْتَظِرْنِي فِي السُّوقِ وَلَا تَنْصَرِفْ - كَانَ

سُكَّانُ الْبَلَدِ يَضْطَرُّونَ عِنْدَ بُلُوغِ خَبَرِ أَنْهَزَامِ  
الْجَيْشِ - كُلُّ شَيْءٍ تَسْتَحْسِنُهُ فِي الْكَلْبِ فَأَطْلُبُهُ فِي  
الْفَرَسِ - كَانَتْ النِّسَاءُ يَزْدَحِمْنَ عِنْدَ بَابِ الْقَصْرِ  
لِيَقْبَلْنَ تَحَفَ الْمَلِكَةِ - غَلَبَ اللُّصُوصُ عَلَى الْمَدِينَةِ  
وَأَهْلَكَوْا كُلَّ مَا فِيهَا - طَلَبْتُ مِنْ فَلَاحِيٍّ أَنْ  
يَذْخِرُوا الشَّجَرَ فِي حُجْرٍ تَحْتَ الْأَرْضِ - كَرِهْتُ أَنْ  
تُقَابَلَ فَخْرِي بِفَعْلِي - سَلَّمَ الرَّئِيسُ الْحِصْنَ إِلَى  
الْمُحَاصِرِينَ.

## 34

I asked pardon of God and he pardoned me — let me wait till the arrival of the guests that I may hear their news — I shall expect you after sunset — brothers sometimes quarrel with their sisters — I shall punish thieves and all doers of evil — he tried to overcome me and I overcame him — no child thinks its mother ugly — the company

differed about (في) what they should do — the governor appointed his son deputy during his absence — everyone dresses his children in new clothes on the two great festivals — does your father sometimes bring a poor man into the house and give him food ?



## LESSON 18

## PASSIVE

The passive (Tables 3, etc.) is made by a change of vowels inside the verb. The inflections are the same as for the active except the vowel of the prefix of the imperfect. In stem I the perfect is *kutiba* and the imperfect *yuktabu*. The same scheme holds good for the derived stems; if there are more than three syllables, the extra one has *u* in the perfect and *a* in the imperfect.

*a*: in the perfect of III and VI becomes *u*: in the passive.

The passive imperfect of IV is the same as that of I.

Hollow verb, stem I.—Some typical forms are put side by side to make the differences apparent.

w. active.	يَقُولُ	يَقْلُنَ	يَقْلُ
passive.	يُقَالُ	يُقْلَنَ	يُقْلَ
y. active.	يَبْنِي	يَبْنِي	يَبْنِي
passive.	يُبْنَى	يُبْنَى	يُبْنَى

The passive can only be used when the agent is not mentioned.

قُتِلَ زَيْدٌ 'Zaid was killed'

'Zaid was killed by Muhammad' cannot be translated into Arabic, which can only say: قَتَلَ مُحَمَّدٌ زَيْدًا

'Muhammad killed Zaid'.

If an active verb has two objects, the first becomes the subject of the passive and the second stays in the accusative.

وَعَدَنَا اللَّهُ الْحَيَاةَ الْأَبَدِيَّةَ God promised us eternal life.

وَعِدْنَا الْحَيَاةَ الْأَبَدِيَّةَ we were promised eternal life.

A verb may take two pronominal suffixes provided that they do not both refer to the same person or thing. When both are third person they cannot be of the same number and gender; indeed, it is better to make one of them independent by using *Piyya*.

أَنكَحَنِهَا he gave her to me in marriage.

نَلْزِمُكُمْوهَا (we make you stick to it).  
we compel you to take it.

أَسْكَنَهُمُوهُ he made them dwell in it.

### Vocabulary 18

فَتَلَ i. فَتَلَ twist.

حَمَلَ i. حَمَلَ carry.

طَعَنَ u. طَعَنَ thrust, pierce,  
criticise.

حَرَّمَ i. حَرَّمَ forbid.

نَسَدَ u. نَسَدَ seek, adjure.

صَامَ u. صَامَ fast.

الْأَسْتَاةُ Stamboul.

مِيتَةٌ mode of death.

عِنَاةٌ care.

فَرَسَخٌ parasang (about three  
miles).

مَسْكَوْكٌ doubted.

زُبْدٌ butter.

خبر IV tell, report.

II put a burden on, load.

حَرَامٌ حَرَامٌ be unlawful, tabu

نشد IV recite (poetry).

لَوْمٌ u. لَام blame.

ضَيْقٌ i. ضَيْقٌ be narrow.

رَفَقٌ kindness.

هَنْدَسَةٌ engineering.

سِكَّةٌ (سِكَّةٌ) coin, road.

نَسَبٌ (a) pedigree, family  
honour.

تَمْرَةٌ dates (coll.) تَمْرَةٌ a date.

رَمَضَانٌ ninth month of Muslim  
year.

## Exercise 35

ضُرِبَتْ تِلْكَ الْبَسَكَةُ فِي الْأَسْتَانَةِ - إِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ  
 يُعْرِفُ بِرُفَقَائِهِ - سِيرَ مِيلَانٍ - إِنْ تَقْتُلُوا فَالْقَتْلُ  
 أَكْرَمُ مِيتَةٍ - حُمِلْتُ عَنَائَةَ إِخْوَانِي الصَّغِيرَةِ  
 بَعْدَ مَوْتِ أَبِيئِنَا - كَانَ مَشْكُوكًا فِي نَسَبِهِ  
 مَطْعُونًا عَلَيْهِ - مَنْ حُرِمَ الرِّفْقَ حُرِمَ الْخَيْرَ كُلَّهُ -  
 هَذَا أَمْرٌ اخْتَلَفَ فِيهِ - صِيَمَ رَمَضَانَ - مَاتَ  
 الْخَلِيفَةُ وَأُسْتُخْلِفَ ابْنُ عَمِّهِ الْأَصْغَرُ - الدُّخُولُ  
 مَمْنُوعٌ - حُمِلَ عَلَى أَفْرَاسِ الْحُكُومَةِ إِلَى  
 مِصْرَ - هَلْ تَعَلَّمْتُمْ عِلْمَ الْهِنْدَسَةِ نَعَمْ عَلَّمَنَاهُ  
 الْمَعْلَمُ - زُرِعَ الْمَزَارِعُ زُهُورًا .

## 36

his poetry is recited before the great ones of the land —  
 the fields were sown with wheat, barley, and millet —  
 entry to the mosques is forbidden — the leader was killed  
 and the army defeated — the earth was made a bed for  
 you — his face was turned from his goal — his boasting is  
 suspect — his father was killed, a man from Egypt killed  
 him — he goes forward like a laden camel — he was blamed  
 for his much fasting — his secret will be disclosed.

LESSON 19

THAT—CONJUNCTION

In the sentences :—

1. He said that he had done it.
2. That you are pleased pleases me.
3. The rain has been so heavy that the crops are good.
4. I sent him to school that he might not be spoiled at home.

In 1 'that' introduces indirect speech ; in 2 it introduces a sentence which takes the place of a noun and may be subject or object in a bigger sentence ; in 3 it denotes a consequence ; in 4 a purpose. Arabic does not distinguish sharply the first three types and only sometimes the fourth.

إِنَّ

We have seen that it is used to introduce an independent nominal sentence and it cannot be translated. After قال 'he said' it is a conjunction.

قَالَ إِنَّ زَيْدًا مُسَافِرٌ he said that Zaid was travelling.

أَنَّ

This is used after all other verbs or substitutes for verbs to introduce a nominal sentence.

أُخْبِرْتُ أَنَّ مَلِكًا مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْهِنْدِ كَانَ لَهُ زَوْجَةٌ

I was told that a king of India had a wife.

(Note how the impossibility of putting an indefinite noun before a definite genitive is evaded.)

وَفِي الْحَدِيثِ أَنَّ رَجُلًا قَالَ

and it is in the tradition that a man said.

زَعَمُوا أَنَّهَا أَخْبَرَتْ they claim that she related.

(This can also be expressed زَعَمُوهَا أَخْبَرَتْ).

A verbal sentence can only follow **أَنَّ** if it is separated from it by a pronoun of the third person which cannot be translated.

أَنَّهُ كَانَ فِي بَغْدَادَ تَاجِرٌ وَهُوَ ذُو مَالٍ وَافِرٌ  
that there was in Baghdad a merchant possessed of  
abundant wealth.

It is also used after prepositions:—

شَهِدْتُ بِأَنَّ اللَّهَ حَقٌّ لِقَاءَهُ

I testify that God the meeting him is truth — that meeting  
God is a fact.

الدَّلَالُ عَلَى أَنَّهُ لَا يَعْيشُ إِلَّا الْإِنْسَابُ كَثِيرَةٌ  
the proofs are many that only a man of the best family will  
live.

Or when a noun governs a sentence:—

مَا دَلِيلُ أَنَّكَ صَادِقٌ

what proof is there that you are truthful?

(**دَلِيلٌ** loses nunation because it is in the construct state before a sentence.)

Note.—The pronoun, which cannot be translated, is also used after **إِنَّ**:

يَا مُوسَى إِنَّهُ أَنَا اللَّهُ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ

O Moses, I am the mighty wise God.

أَنَّ

It introduces direct speech :—

بَلَّغَنِي أَنَّ زَيْدًا مُسَافِرٌ غَدًا

it has reached me (I have heard) that Zaid is travelling to-morrow.

سَمِعْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا عَالِمٌ I have heard that Zaid is learned.

When the main verb does not contain any wish or purpose, أَنَّ may govern the perfect or the imperfect indicative :—

أَعْجَبَنِي أَنَّ قُمْتَ it pleased me that you stood up.

أَعْلَمُ أَنَّ يَنَامُ I know that he is asleep.

But these two sentences would be more often put :—

أَعْجَبَنِي أَنَّكَ قُمْتَ - أَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ يَنَامُ

It is used with the subjunctive when the main verb contains any sort of wish or intention :—

أَمْ حَسِبْتُمْ أَنْ تَدْخُلُوا الْجَنَّةَ

do you reckon that you will enter the garden (paradise)?

أَمَرَ أَنْ لَا يُؤْلَدَ مَوْلُودٌ ذَكَرٌ إِلَّا ذَبَحَهُ

he gave orders that no male child should be born except one killed it.

أَبْلَغُ رَابِعَةً أَنْ يَغْضَبُوا

convey to Rabi'a that they should be angry.

The negative is **لَا** or **أَلَّا** by assimilation.

إِنْ خِفْتُمْ **أَلَّا** يُقِيمَا حُدُودَ اللَّهِ

if you fear that those two will not cause the limitations of God to stand (observe God's laws).

لَيْسَ عَلَيْكُمْ جُنَاحٌ **أَلَّا** تَكْتُبُوهَا

it is no sin for you that you do not write it.

حتى

With the subjunctive it means 'so that', 'until' if any wish or purpose is intended.

لِكَيْ - كَيْ - لِأَنَّ - لِ

These may mean 'in order that', but **لِ** and **لِأَنَّ** may express consequence or even a substantival idea; they govern the subjunctive:—

قَدْ أَمَرْتُ لِأُقْتَلَ

she had given orders that I should be killed.

تُبْ لِيَغْفَرَ لَكَ اللَّهُ

repent in order that God may pardon you.

تَعَلَّمُوا لِكَيْ تَعَلَّمُوا

learn in order that you may teach.

أُمِرْتُ لِأَنِّ أَكُونَ أَوَّلَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

I was commanded that I should become the first of those who submit (the Muslims).

كَيْلًا ; لِ is used as the negative of لَ ; لِأَنَّ لَا — لَيْلًا and لَيْكِيْلًا are usually written as one word.

### Vocabulary 19

صَفَحَ u. صَفَحَ pardon.

عَقَدَ i. عَقَدَ tie, knot.

كَبَرَ u. كَبَرَ be big.

حُطِبَ u. حُطِبَ preach, حُطِبَ ask

a woman in marriage.

طَلَّقَ u. طَلَّقَ be divorced.

عَتَبَ u. i. عَتَبَ blame.

كَفَرَ u. كَفَرَ be an unbeliever ;

كَفَرَانُ be ungrateful.

دَمَ (دِمَاءُ) blood.

زَوْجَ (a) pair, husband.

حَقَّ (b) truth, duty, right.

رَسُولَ (d) messenger, apostle.

شغَلَ VIII work, be busy.

حَمَّ u. حَمَّ be hot.

حُمَّى fever.

فَوْقَ u. فَوْقَ be superior to.

عَقَدَ VIII believe.

كَبَرَ V be proud, act proudly.

IV divorce.

III blame, speak contemptuously

to.

رَبِّ (a) lord.

زَوْجَةٍ wife.

إِنَّمَا only (adv.).

حَلَطَ i. حَلَطَ mix.

حَمَّ (passive), suffer from fever.

حَمَّامَ bath (Turkish).

### Exercise 37

هَلْ لَكَ أَنْ تَذْهَبَ — لَا يَكْرَهُ كَاتِبُ أَنْ يَكْتُبَ —  
إِنْزِلْ مِنَ الْجَنَّةِ فَمَا يَكُونُ لَكَ أَنْ تَتَكَبَّرَ



فِيهَا - لَمْ نَشْتَغِلْ بِذِكْرِ ذَلِكَ كَيْلًا يَطُولَ الْكِتَابُ -  
 مَا أَعْتَقِدُ أَنَّ يَفُوقَ أَحَدًا زَيْدًا فِي عِلْمٍ أَوْ آدَبٍ -  
 إِنَّ الصَّفْحَ الْجَمِيلَ أَنَّكَ لَا تُعَاتِبُ مَنْ صَفَحْتَ  
 عَنْهُ - إِنَّ دِمَاءَكُمْ عَلَيْكُمْ حَرَامٌ إِلَى أَنْ تَقُومُوا  
 بَيْنَ يَدَيِ رَبِّكُمْ - خَطَبَ أَحَدُ امْرَأَةٍ فَقَالَتْ لَا  
 حَتَّى تُطْلِقَ زَوْجَتَكَ - لَسْتُ أَخَافُ عَلَيْكَ أَنْ  
 تَخَافَ وَإِنَّمَا أَخَافُ عَلَيْكَ أَنْ لَا تَخَافَ - الْطِفْلُ  
 ثَقِيلٌ حَتَّى لَا تَحْمِلَهُ أُمُّهُ - سَمِعَ أَعْرَابِيٌّ رَجُلًا  
 يَقُولُ أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ فَقَالَ يَفْعَلُ  
 مَا ذَا.

## 38

his sermon was so long that the hearers went to sleep — we believe that God is one and that he pardons the penitent — the husband did not wish to divorce his elderly wife out of pity for her — I listened attentively for fear that anything of his speech should escape me (fall from me) — what prevented you from prostrating yourself? (two versions) — he sends his servants to bring down snow from the mountains to preserve his food in the hot days — we fear that the two parties will quarrel, one with the other — tell him that I made this melody (voice) for him.

## LESSON 20

## ADVERBS

There are a few adverbs, mostly by-forms of prepositions ; they are indeclinable.

بَعْدُ yet (in negative sentences) ; مِنْ بَعْدُ after, afterwards ; مِنْ قَبْلُ - قَبْلُ before (time) ; مِنْ تَحْتُ - تَحْتُ below ; مِنْ فَوْقُ - فَوْقُ above ; حَيْثُ where ; مِنْ حَيْثُ whence.

لَمْ يَمُتْ بَعْدُ he is not yet dead.

لِلَّهِ الْأَمْرُ مِنْ قَبْلُ وَمِنْ بَعْدُ

God's is the command, before and after = the business is in God's hands.

The infinitive takes the place of an adverb (Lesson 15).

Some English adverbs are replaced by verbs while the English verb takes a subordinate place as imperfect or participle.

Always.

يَبْرَحُ - يَبْرَحُ or يَزَالُ - زَالٌ 'cease' with a negative :—

مَا زَالَ يَقُولُ - لَمْ يَزَلْ يَقُولُ

he did not cease talking = was always talking.

لَا يَزَالُ يَرْكَبُ he is always riding.

لَا تَزَلْ ذَاكِرَ الْمَوْتِ always remember death.

Almost.

كَادُ - كَادَ be on the point of doing (never used alone).

كَدْتُ أَفْهَمُ he almost killed him ; كَادَ يَقْتُلُهُ

I almost understood.

Scarcely.

يَكَادُ - كَادَ with a negative :—

لَا يَكَادُ يَتَحَرَّكُ he scarcely moves.

وَجَدَ قَوْمًا لَا يَكَادُونَ يَفْقَهُونَ قَوْلًا

he found a people who scarcely understood speech.

ذَبَحُوهَا وَمَا كَادُوا يَفْعَلُونَ

they sacrificed it but were nearly not doing so.

Again.

يَزِيدُ - زَادَ 'increase' ; يَعُودُ - عَادَ

عَادَ يَضْرِبُهُ he hit him again.

زَادَ يَشْتِمُهُ he abused him again.

At once, immediately.

لَبِثَ 'remain'; نَشِبَ - يَنْشَبُ 'stick to' with a negative :—

لَمْ يَلْبَثْ أَنْ قَالَ لَهَا at once he said to her.

لَمْ يَنْشَبُوا أَنْ بَلَغَهُمُ الْخَبْرُ بِذَلِكَ

they did not stick that: immediately the news about this came to them.

Soon, quickly.

أَوْشَكَ, IV of a verb first 'w', more usually the

imperfect يُوشِكُ with أَنْ and the subjunctive; rarely the imperfect indicative. Three constructions are possible :—

يُوشِكُ أَنْ يَدْخُلَ زَيْدٌ - يُوشِكُ زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَدْخُلَ -

يُوشِكُ زَيْدٌ يَدْخُلُ

Zaid will soon come in.

The subordinate sentence أَنْ يَدْخُلَ زَيْدٌ is the subject of the verb.

Perhaps.

The defective verb عَسَى of which only the perfect exists. Commonly the third masculine singular alone is used.

عَسَى أَنْ تَكْرَهُوا شَيْئًا

perhaps you do not like something.

Less common is the construction :—

عَسَى الْأَيَّامُ أَنْ يُرْجِعَنَّ قَوْمًا

perhaps the days will bring a tribe back.

There is also the particle لَعَلَّ which is construed like أَنْ .

لَعَلَّ اللَّهَ غَافِرٌ perhaps God is a pardoner.

لَعَلَّهُ يُسَافِرُ perhaps he will go on a journey.

In the morning.

أَصْبَحَ IV do, be in the morning, become morning.

أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا in the morning Zaid was ill.

أَصْبَحْتُ أَحْزَنُ عَلَى مُعَاكَسَةِ الْأَيَّامِ بِي

in the morning I was grieved by the contrariness of the days (fate) to me.

The verb may be followed by a noun or by a sentence with the imperfect ; often it loses all sense of time and means no more than صار or كان 'become'.

أَمْسَى (IV of a verb third weak) 'do, be in the evening'

behaves just like أصبح .

In many other places the English adverb or adverbial expression becomes a verb in Arabic.

أَسْرَعَ الْذَّهَابَ

he made quick the going = he departed hurriedly.

أَبْعَدَ النَّظَرَ

he made distant the look = he looked into the distance.

A verbal sentence follows such phrases as:—

قَلِيلًا مَا - قَلَّ أَنْ - قَلَّ مَا seldom.

كَثِيرًا مَا - رُبَّمَا often.

طَالَ مَا it has lasted long.

قَلَّمَا رَأَيْتُ seldom have I seen.

قَلَّ مَا يَدُومُ وَصَالٌ seldom do (lovers') meetings last.

## Vocabulary 20

حرك II move (trans.).

عاد u. i. عَوَدُ return, do again.

سَتَمَ u. i. سَتَمُ abuse.

نَسَبَ نَسَبًا be attached to.

سَرَعَ سُرْعَةً be quick.

بَعُدَ بَعْدًا be far, distant.

ذَبَحَ a. ذَبَحَ cut the throat,  
sacrifice.

فَقِهَ فَقَاهُ understand.

عَكَسَ i. عَكَسَ turn upside  
down.

حَسَنَ حَسْنًا be good.

صَبَحَ (a) morning.	سَفَرُ III journey, travel.
صَبَحَ II attack in the morning.	سَرَعَ IV make quick, go fast.
مَسَاءُ evening.	بَعْدَ II, IV make distant.
حَصَلَ u. حُصُولُ come to, befall (not of motion).	عَلَجَ III treat (illness, etc.).
— II obtain.	عَكَسَ III oppose.
رَزَقَ u. رِزْقُ provide.	حَسَنَ IV make good, do well.
سَفَرُ (a) journey.	صَبَاحُ morning.
نُصِيحَةٌ advice, help.	صَبَحَ VIII drink in the morning.
حَرَكَ V move (intrans.).	غَدًا next day.
هَهُنَا — هُنَا here.	غَدًا to-morrow.
ثَمَّ there.	رِزْقُ (a) daily food, rations.
زَادَ i. زِيَادَةٌ increase (trans and intrans.).	أَسْوَةٌ (إِسَاءٌ) model.
بَثَّ remain, stay.	هُنَالِكَ — هُنَاكَ there.
	ثُمَّ then.

## Exercise 39

لَا يَلْبَثُ أَنْ يَرْجِعَ مِنْ سَفَرِهِ - لَا يَكَادُ الْمَرِيضُ  
يَتَحَرَّكَ عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ - لَمْ تَزَلْ تَنْفَعُنِي بِنُصِيحَتِكَ  
وَأُسْوَتِكَ - إِنْ حَدَّثْنَا أَحْسَنَ الْحَدِيثِ وَإِنْ حَدَّثَنَا  
أَحْسَنَ الْأُسْتِمَاعِ - أَمْثَلُ هَذَا يَقُولُ الشَّعْرُ أَوْ

يُخْسِنُ شِعْرًا - حَصَلْنَا عِدَّةَ لَيْالٍ لَا نَنَامُ مِنْ  
 الْبَرْدِ وَكَذْنَا نَهْلِكَ - أَصْبَحَ التَّاجِرُ وَالنَّاسُ  
 يَزْدَحِمُونَ قُدَّامَ دُكَانِهِ - تَعَلَّمُوا الْعِلْمَ فَإِنْ تَكُونُوا  
 صِغَارَ قَوْمٍ فَعَسَى أَنْ تَكُونُوا كِبَارَ قَوْمٍ آخَرَ -  
 إِنْ أَنْكَحَكَهَا فَعَسَى أَنْ تُرْزَقَ وَلَدًا مِثْلِي -  
 أَكَادُ أَخَافُ مِنْ صَوْتِ الرِّيحِ .

## 40

I almost believed what he was saying — they fled quickly (two versions) — he went in without delay — perhaps they will come back to-morrow (two versions) — she scarcely blamed her son for swimming in the great river though (and) he did not swim well — the proud will soon repent of their pride — that young man almost turned the world upside down — they defeated us once and will not do so again — two men of great strength moved the stone but it scarcely moved — don't do this again.

## LESSON 21

## VERBS FIRST 'W' AND 'Y'

First 'w' (Table 7).

Deviations from the strong verb occur in the imperfect of I and in VIII.

If the characteristic vowel of the imperfect of I is or ought to be 'i', the 'w' is omitted.



وَلَدَ produce young ; يَلِدُ imperfect ; لِدْ imperative.

In some verbs a final guttural has turned this 'i' into 'a' but the 'w' is still omitted.

وَضَعَ	place	يَضَعُ	ضَعَ	وَضَعُ
وَقَعَ	fall	يَقَعُ	قَعَ	وُقُوعٌ
وَدَعَ	leave	يَدَعُ	دَعَ	وَدَعُ
وَزَعَ	restrain	يَزَعُ	زَعَ	وَزَعُ

A few have 'i' in the perfect and in the imperfect contrary to rule.

وَرِثَ	inherit	يَرِثُ	وَفِقَ	find suitable	يَفِقُ
وَثِقَ	trust	يَثِقُ	وَرِمَ	be swollen	يَرِمُ
وَلِيَ	be near	يَلِي	(this is also third 'y')		

In the imperfect of IV the 'w' combines with the preceding 'u' to form a long vowel. From وَجَدَ find IV means 'cause to be findable' and then 'create': أَوْجَدَ

. إِيْجَادٌ - أَوْجِدُ - يُوجِدُ -

There is no VII.

In VIII the 'w' is assimilated to the 't':—

اتَّهَمَ suspect ; اتَّفَقَ agree.

Verbs of the forms فَعَلَ فَعِلَ are regular in the imperfect of I :—

وَجَلَ be afraid ; يَوْجَلُ impf. اِيَجَلُ impv. but وَجَلَ  
وَبُلُ be unhealthy يَوْبُلُ اَوْبُلُ فَوْبُلُ

Some nouns from these roots lose the first radical :—

جَهَّة direction هَيْثَة reliability.  
سَعَة (width) wealth, ability.

Though only two radicals are visible, there is no doubt about the root. Feminine nouns from hollow roots have a long vowel in the middle : قَامَةٌ 'stature' ; those from a third weak root have a long vowel after the second radical : زَكَاة 'act of sacrificing'. A few nouns from third weak roots are without the long vowel but they all have 'u' in the first syllable : لُغَة 'language'.

Verbs first 'y'.

There are only a few of these and the variations from the strong verb are few.

Two verbs have two imperfects in I :—

يَبْسُ be dry      يَبْسُ and يَبْسُ  
يَيْسُ despair      يَيْسُ and يَيْسُ

Note the imperative I : اَيْسِرْ - يَيْسِرْ - يَسِرْ be easy.

The imperfect and participle IV : مُوسِرٌ يُوسِرُ become rich.

In VIII assimilation occurs : اِتَّأَسَ despair.

Plurals, which can be deduced from the singular, are no longer put in the vocabulary.

### Vocabulary 21

وجه II (turn the face) send.

وَجَدَ find.

وَقُوفٌ and وَقَفَ stand.

وَسِعَ a. سَعَى be wide, include,  
be able.

وَجَبَ and وَجُوبٌ be necessary.

وَرِثَ i. وِرْثٌ inherit.

وَدَعَ a. وَدَعٌ leave.

وَكَّلَ and وَكَلٌ entrust.

وَهَمَ VIII suspect.

صِفَةٌ (صِفَاتٌ) description, quality.

عَدَلَ justice.

فَلَاسِفَةٌ (فَلَسَفَةٌ) philosopher.

مَقْدَرَةٌ strength.

سُوءٌ evil, badness.

وجه V (send oneself) go.

وَصَلَ and وُصِّلَ reach, arrive at,  
give.

وَصَفَ and وَصَفَ describe.

وسع VIII be wide.

وَرَدَ and وُرُودٌ go down.

وَضَعَ and وُضِعَ put, put down.

ودع II say good-bye.

فَكْرٌ (a) thought, idea.

وكل II appoint as agent.

مَعْدِرَةٌ excuse.

— VIII rely on.

مَفْجَرَةٌ sin (of any sort).

وفق VIII agree.

سَيِّئٌ bad.

حَالٌ f. (a) condition.

## Exercise 41

اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يُولَدْ - هُوَ رَجُلٌ لَا يُوصَفُ  
 صِفَتُهُ - لَمْ يَدْعُ ابْنَهُ الصَّغِيرَ يَرِثُ مَعَ الْكَبِيرِ -  
 دَعُوا الْمَعَاذِرَ فَإِنَّ أَكْثَرَهَا مَفْاجِرٌ - إِنَّ اللَّهَ  
 يَسَعُ عِلْمُهُ أَفْعَالَ عِبَادِهِ وَأَفْكَارَهُمْ - الْعَدْلُ أَنْ  
 تَضَعَ الْأَشْيَاءَ فِي أَمْكَنَتِهَا - مَنْ أَسْوَأَ النَّاسِ  
 حَالًا قَالَ مَنْ اتَّسَعَتْ مَعْرِفَتُهُ وَضَاقَتْ مَقْدَرَتُهُ  
 وَبَعُدَتْ هِمَّتُهُ - إِيْتَهُمُوهُ بِالْكَفْرِ لِدَرْسِهِ كُتِبَ  
 الْفَلَاسِفَةِ - يَجِبُ عَلَى الْمُتَعَلِّمِ أَنْ يَطْلُبَ  
 الْحَقَّ - اِنْتَظَرْتُ وُصُولَ الْأَخْبَارِ وَلَمْ تَصِلْ بَعْدُ -  
 يُوشِكُ الطَّبِيبَانِ أَنْ يَتَّفِقَا عَلَى عِلاجِ الْمَرِيضِ.

describe the conditions of your disease (symptoms) — fresh news was arriving every hour — the earth became narrow on him and it had been wide (his condition changed for the worse) — I sent him to you but he did not go — we heard you describing what you had done — we shall find them standing in the street — there is not found ingratitude like that of an ungrateful child — I heard his friends saying good-bye to him — was it necessary for you to entrust this business to someone else? — put your hand on the book of God and swear.

## LESSON 22

### RELATIVE CLAUSES

There is no relative pronoun in Arabic.

When the antecedent is indefinite, the relative clause is added without any connecting link.

أَطْلُبُ رَجُلًا يَقُومُ عَلَيَّ بُسْتَانِي

I am looking for a man who will stand over (look after) my garden.

When the antecedent is definite, **الَّذِي** is used as a link between the antecedent and the relative clause. It is inflected as follows:—

	sing.	dual, nom.	oblique	plural
masc.	الَّذِي	الَّذَانِ	الَّذَيْنِ	الَّذِينَ
fem.	الَّتِي	الَّتَانِ	الَّتَيْنِ	الَّلَوَاتِي

The link agrees in case with the antecedent ; this is visible only in the dual.

When the English relative is in an oblique case, the link has to be supplemented by a personal pronoun in the relative clause. This pronoun is often omitted when it should be in the accusative.

الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي قَتَلَ أَبِي

the man who killed my father.

الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي قَتَلَهُ أَبِي

the man whom my father killed.

الْمَرْأَةُ الَّتِي كَانَ عِنْدَهَا ابْنِي

the woman with whom my son was.

أَبْعَثُ إِلَيْكَ الْمَرْأَتَيْنِ الَّتَيْنِ تَطْلُبُ مِنْهُمَا خَبَرَ ابْنَتِكَ

I am sending to you the two women from whom you can ask news of your daughter.

If the antecedent is first or second person, the pronoun in the relative clause may agree with it or be in the third person to agree with the link.

أَنْتِ الَّتِي أُسْتَوْدَعْتُكِ السِّرَّ

are you she to whom I entrusted the secret ?

كُنْ أَنْتَ الَّذِي تُكَلِّمُهَا

be you he who speaks to her.

نَحْنُ الَّذِينَ بَايَعُوا مُحَمَّدًا

we are those who did homage to Muhammad.

‘He who’ is rendered by **الَّذِي** or **مَنْ**; ‘that which’ by **الَّذِي** or **مَا**.

**مَنْ** may take the verb in the singular or plural; **مَا** always has a singular verb.

مَنْ أَشْعَرُ الْعَرَبِ قَالَ الَّذِي يَقُولُ . . . .

who is the most poetical of the Arabs? he said, he who says . . . .

يَا مَنْ لَا يَمُوتُ أَرْحَمَ

O, he who dies not, have mercy = you who die not have mercy.

عَرَفْتُ مَا عَرَفْتَهُ

I know what you know.

**أَيُّ** ‘which of’ is always followed by a genitive,

either a noun or a pronominal suffix. It may be singular or plural and may belong to the main sentence or the relative clause.

سَلِّمْ عَلَى أَيُّهُمْ أَفْضَلُ

or

سَلِّمْ عَلَى أَيِّهِمْ أَفْضَلُ

greet those (him) of them who are most worthy.

## Vocabulary 22

جَوَازٌ u. جَوَازٌ be allowable.	بَدَنٌ (a) body.
طَرَحَ a. طَرَحَ throw down.	ذِهْنٌ mind, intellect.
رسل III write letters to.	جوز III pass beyond.
زَعَمَ a. زَعَمَ think, claim.	قَسَمَ i. قَسَمَ divide.
رَغِبَ like, be pleased	رسل IV send.
with; عَنْ dislike.	وَجَعَ i. وَجَعَ feel pain.
زَرَعَ a. زَرَعَ sow.	حَصَدَ u. حَصَدَ reap.
دَاءٌ (a) disease.	أَدْوِيَّةٌ (أَدْوِيَّةٌ) medicine, remedy.
عِلْمٌ (b) knowledge, science.	أَدَبٌ (a) manners, arts.
أَسِرَّةٌ (أَسِرَّةٌ) anything on which	صِحَّةٌ health.
one can sit or lie.	زَكَاةٌ sharpness (metaphorical).
خَاتَمٌ (خَوَاتِمٌ) seal.	صَحِيحٌ healthy, true.

## Exercise 43

كَانَ لَهُ بَنُو عَمِّ وَرِثُوهُ - مَا أَنْتُمْ الَّذِينَ يَهْرُبُونَ  
 مِنَ الْحَقِّ - الَّذِي يَزْرَعُهُ الْإِنْسَانُ الْيَوْمَ يَحْصُدُهُ  
 غَدًا - نَزَلْتُ عَنِ السَّرِيرِ الَّذِي كُنْتُ مَطْرُوحًا  
 عَلَيْهِ - كَانَ ذَلِكَ خَاتَمُ أَعْمَالِهِ الْحَسَنَةِ الَّتِي  
 تَجَاوَزُ الْوَصْفَ - كَيْفَ لَا تَرْغَبُ فِي تَذْيِيرِ يَجْمَعُ



لَكَ صِحَّةَ الْبَدَنِ وَذَكَاءَ الذَّهْنِ وَكَثْرَةَ الْمَالِ -  
 الْجَارِيَتَانِ التَّانِ وَجَهْتُهُمَا إِلَى مَدْرَسَةِ الْبَنَاتِ  
 فَذَ صَارَتَا ذَوَاتِنِي عِلْمٍ وَأَدَبٍ - كُنْ لَهُمْ كَالطَّبِيبِ  
 الَّذِي لَا يَعْجَلُ بِالدَّوَاءِ قَبْلَ مَعْرِفَةِ الدَّاءِ - هَلْ بَعَثَ  
 الْعَبْدَيْنِ الَّذِينَ تَرَعَّيْنِ عَنْهُمَا - صِفْنِي لِي مَنْ  
 كَلَّمَكَ.

## 44

I appointed as my agent one in whom I trust — he asserts that what came down on him had never come down on another — he who does not know the disease does not know the remedy — they do not wish to sell the two books which they inherited from their uncle — we sowed the fields which we had found unsown — these are the two men who found the wounded man and carried him to my house — I came out by the same door as in I went — the duties, which were incumbent on me, were beyond my strength — I said good-bye to the work in which I took pleasure and turned to work in which I took no pleasure.

## LESSON 23

## DOUBLED VERBS

In these verbs (consult Tables 8 and 9) the second radical is the same as the third.

The variations from the strong verb can be summarized in three rules :—

1. When the third radical has a vowel, the second loses its vowel and the two consonants are written once with *shadda*.
2. When the third radical has no vowel, the second keeps its vowel and the two consonants are written separately.
3. In the imperfect, when Rule 1 applies, the vowel of the second radical is thrown back to the first.

Rule 2 applies, in the perfect, to the first and second persons and to the third feminine plural ; in the imperfect to the feminine plurals only.

(The word, contraction, is avoided for there is no reason to think that these verbs were originally strong.)

The jussive has two forms ; one is regular according to Rule 2, the other is short like the imperfect indicative. A final double consonant cannot be pronounced so a short vowel, usually ' a ', is added ; the result is that the jussive cannot be distinguished by form alone from the subjunctive. Both forms existed side by side.

The imperative may be formed from the short form of the jussive and then needs no liaison.

A long vowel between the second and third radicals prevents them from coalescing ; examples are the infinitives of stems II, VII, VIII, and X and the passive participle of I.

Stems IX and XI of the strong verb are only special forms of doubled verb and present no difficulties (Table 9).

The derived stems follow the same rules ; II is no exception, for the second radical is already doubled and no consonant can be tripled.

V is sometimes irregular, the third radical being changed into ' y ' and resembling a verb third weak.

تَظَنَّتْ becomes تَظَنَيْتَ you think.

Peculiar is the change from قَصَصْتَ to قَصَيْتَ you cut.

Other forms behave like hollow verbs : ظَلَّتْ or ظَلَّتْ from ظَلَّ remain أَحَسْتُ for أَحَسْتُ I feel.

Nouns from these roots also follow the same rules.

مَحَلٌّ (مَحَالٌّ) 'place' come from theoretical *maḥlalun* and *maḥalilu*; حَلَالٌ (loosed) not taboo, lawful, permissible.

The connection of ideas is this :—

حَلَّ u. حَلَّ loose, untie.

When the bedouin unties his baggage, he camps dwells so :—

حَلَّ u. حُلُولٌ dwell.

The antithesis of loosing and binding is familiar from the Gospels :—

صَاحِبُ الْحَلِّ وَالْعَقْدِ

the master of loosing and binding—holder of supreme power.

حَلَّ i. حَلَّ be not taboo, be lawful, allowable.

The opposite of this is حَرَامٌ حَرَامٌ be taboo, sacred, unlawful. حَرَّمَ i. or حَرَّمَ a. حَرَّيْمٌ forbid, prevent.

The two senses appear in one sentence:—

سَفَكُوا دَمَ الْحَرَامِ فِي شَهْرِ الْحَرَامِ فِي بِلَادِ  
الْحَرَامِ

they shed forbidden blood in the sacred month, in the holy place.

These verbs go back to a time before morality had been associated with religion.

In the last example a noun in the genitive case acts as an adjective:—

رَجَالُ السَّوءِ evil men.

### Vocabulary 23

سَرَّ u. سُرُورٌ please, delight.	حَيَّاتٌ (حَيَّاتٌ) snake.
حَسَّ IV to perceive, know.	مُصْعَبٌ a man's name.
عَدَّ u. عَدٌّ count.	ظَنَّ u. ظَنٌّ have an opinion.
مَرَّ u. مَرُورٌ pass by.	فَرَّ i. فِرَارٌ run away.
مَدَّ u. مَدٌّ stretch.	عَدَّ IV prepare (trans.).
رَدَّ u. رَدٌّ come back, send back.	عَدَّ X prepare oneself.
خَفَّ i. خِفَّةٌ be light (weight).	مَرَّ X continue.
عَفَّ i. عِفَّةٌ be chaste, temperate.	مَدَّ IV help, reinforce.
قَصَّ u. قِصٌّ tell a story, cut.	مَدَّ X ask for help.
قَرَّ i. قَرَارٌ be firm, fixed.	خَفَّ X despise.
دَلَّ u. دَلٌّ guide.	حَبَّ IV love, like.
لَقِيَ (inf. of لَقِيَ) meeting.	مَلَّ a. مَلَلٌ be disgusted with.

قُرَّ u. قُرَّ be cold.

فِتْنَةٌ (فَتْنٌ) temptation, civil war.

— IV acknowledge, confirm.

حَيَاءٌ shame, modesty.

ضَلَّ i. ضَلَّ go astray.

الْبَصْرَةُ Basra.

### Exercise 45

أَحِبُّهَا وَتَحِبُّنِي وَيُحِبُّ جَمَلِي نَاقَتَهَا - ظَنَنْتُ  
 أَنَّهُ يَسْتَعِدُّ لِلْمَصْعُودِ فِي الْجِبَالِ - لَا تَظُنُّنِي  
 أَخَالَفُكَ - مَنْ عَفَّ خَفَّ عَلَى الصَّدِيقِ لِقَاءُهُ  
 وَأَخُو الْحَوَائِجِ وَجْهُهُ مَمْلُوءٌ - ذُكِرَ فِي أَمْرِ  
 مُصْعَبٍ وَعَزَلَ أَخِيهِ إِيَّاهُ عَنِ الْبَصْرَةِ وَرَدَّهٖ إِيَّاهُ  
 إِلَيْهَا غَيْرُ هَذِهِ الْقِصَّةِ - أَسْرَعُ النَّاسِ إِلَى  
 الْفِتْنَةِ أَقْلُهُمْ حَيَاءً مِنَ الْفِرَارِ - إِنِّي أَخْسَسْتُ  
 بِصَوْتِ مُرُورِ حَيَّةٍ أَلَمْ تُحَسَّ بِهِ - مَدَّ يَدَكَ  
 إِلَى حَبْلِ اللَّهِ وَيُمِدُّكَ - عُدُّوا الْمَرْضَى وَأَعِدُّوا  
 الْأَدْوِيَةَ لِعِلَاجِهِمْ - مَرَّ بِالْأَوْلَادِ يَقْصُ عَلَيْهِمْ  
 قِصَصَ النَّبِيِّ

guide me to what will delight me — I thought that you were guiding me aright and you have led me astray — the boy used to ask the teacher for help and he helped him — you want to become chief of the tribe ; then despise what folks may say — we thought that the women were fleeing in fear while (and) they were hurrying to meet their husbands — we do not know what to think — unbelievers are misled and mislead others — I saluted the company and they returned my salute — do you think they will acknowledge my rights ? — there is none to turn back what God does.

## LESSON 24

HOLLOW VERBS—*Continued* (Table 6)

Stems II, III, V, and VI are like the strong verbs ; ' w ' verbs differ from ' y ' roots :—

زَوَّجَ give in marriage ; تَزَوَّجَ marry ;

يَبَيَّنَ distinguish, make plain ; تَبَيَّنَ make plain to oneself, be plain ;

بَايَعَ do, receive homage ; جَاوَبَ answer.

In the other stems there is no distinction between the two classes. A long vowel appears in place of the middle radical just as in I ; in the perfects that vowel is *a* : which is shortened where necessary to *a*.

In the imperfect of IV and X the vowel is *i* : , shortened where necessary to *i*.

In VII and VIII the imperfect unexpectedly has ' a '.

long or short as is required. **اَتَقَادَ** obey (let himself be led); **اِخْتَارَ** choose.

Indicative. Jussive. Imperative. Infinitive.

يَتَقَادُ	يَتَقَدَّ	اَتَقَدَّ	اِتْقَادٌ
يَخْتَارُ	يَخْتَرُ	اِخْتَرِ	اِخْتِيَارٌ

Note the infinitive of IV and X; the middle radical is lost and the feminine ending 'at' is added as compensation.

**اِقَامَةٌ** IV      **اِسْتِقَامَةٌ** X.

Some verbs have both strong and weak forms:—

**اَرْوَحَ** — **اَرَّاحَ** give rest; **اِسْتَرْوَحَ** **اِسْتَرَّاحَ** rest.

A few of the type **فَعَلَ** have strong forms only:

**سَوَدَ** be black; **أَسْوَدَ** blacken;

but **اَسْوَدَّ** XI be black and **سَوَّدَ** II blacken are more common.

## Vocabulary 24

**سوف** II make future, postpone. **جواب** III, IV answer.

**صَادَ** i. **صَيْدَ** hunt, fish. **قَادَ** i. lead.

**رود** IV wish, will.

**خير** II give a choice to.

قوم IV stay, set up.

وَعَدَ i. وَعَدَ promise.

طوع IV obey.

طَوَّعًا willingly.

عون IV help.

يَهُودِيَّ (sing.) Jews.

حَفَافِشُ (حَفَافِشُ) bat (animal).

بَالٌ mind.

صوب II think right.

حول VIII employ devices,

tricks.

عَوْنٌ help

يبع VIII buy.

صيد VIII take by hunting.

حوج VIII need, be in want

(إلى) (always with).

نَقَدَ u. نَقَدَ pay cash.

فِيءَ VII obey.

خير VIII choose

قوم X be straight.

وعد IV threaten.

طوع X be able.

وَعِيدٌ threat.

عون X ask the help of.

نُصْرَانِيَّ (نُصْرَانِيَّ) Christian.

مَسْتَرٌ u. سَتَرٌ hide.

مَا بَالٌ what about, what is the  
matter with ?

صوب IV come upon, hit.

حِيلَةٌ (حِيلٌ) trick, stratagem,  
device.

لَيْئِمٌ (c) base, ignoble.

### Exercise 47

وَعَدُ الْكَرِيمِ نَقَدَ وَوَعَدُ اللَّئِيمِ تَسْوِيفٌ - صِدْنَا  
وَنَصْطَادُ - لَمْ تُرْزِ أَخْتِي أَنْ تُطِيعَ أَوَامِرَ  
مُعَلِّمَتَيْهَا - لِمَا لَا تُرِيدِينَ أَنْ تَتْرُكِي شُغْلَكَ -



الْخَفَافِيشُ تَسْتَرُ بِالنَّهَارِ خَوْفَ أَنْ تُصْطَادَ  
 لِحُسْنِهَا - أَرَادَ أَبِي أَنْ يَبْتَاعَ مَا يَحْتَاجُ إِلَيْهِ  
 أَهْلُهُ - سَمِعَ أَحَدَ رَجُلًا يَسْتَعِينُ اللَّهُ فِي أَمْرِ  
 أُمِّهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ مَا بَالُ أَيْكَ قَالَ هُوَ رَجُلٌ  
 يَحْتَسِلُ لِنَفْسِهِ - أَخِيرَكَ أَبُوكَ فِي تَزْوُجِكَ - لَا  
 اخْتَارَتْ أُمِّي زَوْجَةً لِي - سَمِعْنَا يَهُودِيًّا يُوعِدُ  
 غُلَامَهُ - يَجِبُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَنْ تُجِيبُوا طَلَبَ  
 الْحُكُومَةِ - قَادَ الشَّرُّ تِلْكَ النِّسَاءَ أَنْ يَمْلَنَ  
 عَنْ طَرِيقِ الرِّفْقِ وَانْقَدْنَ .

he kept quiet and was quiet for a long time — avarice makes men incline from the Straight Path — we asked for his help and he helped us — he set up a great stone as a reminder of the evil which had befallen the people — the brigands frightened the inhabitants of out-of-the-way (distant) houses — care for my family and property is killing me — that Jew does what he likes and the Jews and Christians think him right — the wise man learns from the misfortunes of others — she needed help but found no helper — I used every device to get out of the fortress in which I was a captive but did not find a way out — my wife bought clothes of silk and wool.

## LESSON 25

## VERBS WITH THE GLOTTAL STOP

Verbs with the glottal stop (consult Tables 10-12) are regular in pronunciation, apart from a few freaks. There remains the difficulty of writing; the rule of thumb given in the chapter on the alphabet and the following notes will help to remove this.

## FIRST HAMZA

When two hamzas should occur in one syllable, the second drops and the vowel is lengthened. Thus *ʔaʔ* becomes *ʔa:*, *ʔuʔ* becomes *ʔu:*, and *ʔiʔ* becomes *ʔi:*. *ʔa:* is written with madda.

## Imperfect First Singular.

Active. Passive.

أَمَلٌ	hope	يَأْمَلُ	أَمَلٌ	أَوْمَلُ
--------	------	----------	--------	----------

## Imperative.

أَمَل	hope	أَوْمَلُ	but	فَأْمَلُ
أَسَرَ	take captive	يَأْسِرُ	إِسِرْ	فَأْسِرْ

Two drop the hamza always in the imperative:—

كُنْ - يَا كُلْ - أَكَلْ    خُذْ - يَا اخْذْ    take أَخْذْ

أَمْرٌ drops hamza when the imperative stands alone but

retains it after **و** and **ف**: **مُرْ** command but **وَأْمُرْ**.

## Stem III

أَكَلَ eat with يُؤْكِلُ impf. آكِل impv. أَكَل perf. pass.

## Stem IV

أَكَلَ feed. يُؤْكِلُ impf. أَكَل 1 per. impv. إِيكَال infin.

There is no VII.

## Stem VIII

فَأَتَرَرِ wear a loin cloth but إِيْتَرَرِ .  
فَأَتَرَرِ impf. إِيْتَرَرِ impv. but يَأْتَرَرُ .

## Passive

أُوتِمِنَ was given authority ; أَلَّذِي أُوتِمِنَ he who was given authority.

أَخَذَ assimilates *p* to *t* : إِيْتَخَذَ .

## MIDDLE HAMZA

The spelling is often not rigid : يَسْئَلُ — يَسْأَلُ .

The passive perfect I is سُئِلَ ; this spelling seems to be derived from a dialect which used the form *si:la*.

سَأَلَ has also an irregular imperative سَلْ, jussive يَسَلْ.

The active participle I is like that of the hollow verb so

سَئِرٌ	be left over	} سَائِرٌ
يَسِيرُ - سَارَ	go	
يَسُورُ - سَارَ	jump	

### THIRD HAMZA

Some of the spellings are not rigid:—

3 masc. dual perfect قَرَأَا - قَرَأَآ

2 fem. sing. impf. تَقْرَأَيْنِ - تَقْرَأَيْنِ

3 masc. plu. impf. يَقْرَأُونَ - يَقْرَأُونَ

### Vocabulary 25

ادب II educate.

أَمِنَ u.i. أَمِنْ be safe from.

أَجَرَ u.i. أَجْرٌ hire out.

اثر II make a mark on,  
influence.

اثر IV prefer.

سَأَلَ a. سَأَلْ ask, beg.

نبأ IV tell.

كفأ III reward.

أَنَسَ u.i. أُنْسٌ be friendly.

اقرأ a. قرأ read, repeat.

أسير (أسرى) prisoner.

دين (a) religion.

حسد u.i. حسد envy.

إذن إذن permit.

بدأ a. بدء and VIII begin.

امن IV believe.

اجر X hire, rent.

اثر V receive a mark, be

influenced.

لجأ VIII take refuge.

الف II compose (a book), unite

(men), win over.

هنا II congratulate.

انس III treat kindly.

اخر II make late.

— V be late.

ملاك (ملائكة) ملك - ملاك angel.

جسم (a) body.

آخر last.

صيب share.

### Exercise 49

مَنْ أَدَّبَ وَلَدَهُ صَغِيرًا سُرَّ بِهِ كَبِيرًا - آمَنْتُ بِاللَّهِ  
وَبِمَلَائِكَتِهِ وَبِرُسُلِهِ وَبِكُتُبِهِ وَبِالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ -  
هَلْ يَأْذَنُ لِي الْقَائِدُ بِسُؤَالِ الْأَسْرَى - كُنْتُ  
أَسْتَأْجِرُ مَنْزِلِي مِنْ تَاجِرٍ وَأَذْفَعُ أَجْرَهُ لَهُ كُلَّ  
شَهْرٍ - ابْتَدَأَ الْعَيْدَ بِقِرَاءَةِ الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ ثُمَّ  
خَاطَبَتِ امْرَأَةٌ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ تُنَبِّئُ نَبَأَ الرَّسُولِ -  
كَانَ الشَّيْخُ يُوَاسِسُ السَّائِلِينَ وَالْمُسْتَجِئِينَ -

اِكْتَسَبَ مُكَافَاةً عَظِيمَةً بِتَأْلِيفِهِ كِتَابًا يُدَافِعُ  
 عَنْ دِينِ النَّصَارَى - كَانَ النَّاسُ يَهْنِئُونَهُ بِرُجُوعِهِ  
 سَالِمًا عَنِ الْحَرْبِ - اِقْرَأُوا عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامَ وَأَنْبِئُوهُ  
 بِوُصُولِي إِلَيْهِ غَدًا - مَا كُنْتُ لِأَوْثَرِ بَنَصِييَ مِنْكَ  
 أَحَدًا - أَلَمْ يَأْتِ أَحَدٌ الْمُصِيبَةَ.

## 50

give this beggar food and tell him to go away — he was not safe from the devices of the envious — have you hired men to harvest your fields? — I treated these people with friendliness and they rewarded me richly — your friends will eat and drink with me — I shall feed it on bread and dates — then the poets will ask the governor's permission to begin the recitation of their poems — the sun left its mark on the face of the peasant but the strength of his body was not affected — the caravan is late; rain has delayed it.

## LESSON 26

## VERBS—THIRD WEAK (Tables 13-16)

These verbs have 'w' or 'y' as third radical.

فَعَلَ. The third masculine singular of the perfect and

the short forms of the imperfect have only two syllables instead of the three of the strong verb. In the simple stem of verbs third 'w' the third masculine singular of the

perfect is written with *alif*, in those third 'y' and in all the derived stems of both classes it is written with 'y'. This probably points to an original difference in pronunciation but this has long been ignored. When the inflections of the perfect begin with a consonant, the forms are like those of the strong verb except that the weak radical forms a diphthong with the characteristic vowel. Elsewhere there is contraction for which no rules can be given. The third masculine dual cannot be contracted for the inflection is already long.

Most verbs with 'w' have 'u' in the imperfect and most with 'y' have 'i'. The radical combines with the characteristic to form a long vowel. When a back vowel is followed by a front vowel, the weak consonant reappears to separate them, as in the dual. When two back vowels come together, one is lost; the survivor is the vowel of the inflection for, if that were lost, the significant form would be destroyed. Thus تَذْعِينَ (root *dʕw*) second feminine singular; if the 'u' had survived, the resulting word would be تَذْعُونَ which is second masculine plural.

Again, يَرْمُونَ (root *rmy*) third masculine plural; if the 'i' had been kept, the result would be يَرْمِينَ which is third feminine plural.

The subjunctive explains itself.

The short forms of the jussive lose the letter of prolongation and with it all trace of the third radical.

The emphatic can only be learnt.

The imperative, of course, has liaison.

فَعَلَ. In verbs third 'w' there is partial assimilation of 'w' to 'y' so there is only one form for both classes.

Perfect. The characteristic 'i' is separated from 'a'

of the inflection by the third radical and is lost before *u*. When the inflection begins with a consonant, 'y' coalesces with the characteristic to form *i*.

Imperfect. As in the transitive the short forms have only two syllables, the vowel of the second being *a*. Before a back vowel, this is shortened and forms a diphthong. Before a consonant, it is resolved into the diphthong *ay*. Before *a*: (in the dual) it is resolved into 'a' and 'y' which begins the next syllable.

Passive. What has been said about the intransitive applies to the passive also.

Derived stems. Both classes become third 'y'.

Active participle. Contraction takes place in the nominative and genitive; the third radical and the case ending drop and nunation is given to the second radical:—

رَامٍ 'a shooter' (nom. and gen.) but رَامِيًا (acc.)

الرَّامِي 'the shooter' (nom. and gen.) but الرَّامِيَّ (acc.)

This applies to all active participles of the derived stems and to all nouns from these roots with 'i' before the weak radical.

Something similar happens in some plurals:—

فَاعِلَةٌ has for plural فَوَاعِلُ.

So جَوَارِيَّةٌ should have جَوَارِي but *iyu* is contracted to 'i' and nunation is added to indicate the contraction.

جَوَارٍ (nom. and gen.) جَوَارِيَّ (acc.)

الْجَوَارِي (nom. and gen.) الْجَوَارِيَّ (acc.)

Passive participle. In stem I verbs final 'w' have forms



like مَدْعُوٌ and final 'y' like مَرْمِيٌّ with assimilation because the resulting word cannot be confused with any other part of the verb.

When a noun from these roots has 'a' after the second radical, contraction occurs; the case ending is dropped and nunation put over the second radical. *Alif* is written in the 'w' roots and 'y' in those with 'y'.

الْفَتَى (فَتِيَانٌ) a man in the prime of life

العَصَا (عَصِيٌّ) stick

These nouns are indeclinable. All passive participles of the derived stems are of this form. مُصْطَفًى - مُلْقًى

مُسْتَلْقًى.

Infinitive. Stem II shortens the *i:* and adds *at* for compensation. تَسْلِيَةٌ.

Stem III. In the form مُفَاعَلَةٌ contraction occurs مَلَاقَاةٌ; the dotted 'h' shows that it cannot be a feminine plural.

Stems V and VI. The 'u' is assimilated to the 'y' and contraction occurs.

V تَلَقَّى VI تَرَاضَى

When the second radical has *a:*, the final radical becomes *ʾ*:—

رِدَايَ (أَرْدِيَّةٌ) cloak (final 'y').

كِسَايَ (أَكْسِيَّةٌ) covering, dress (final 'w').

Stems III, IV, VII, VIII, and X form their infinitives in this way.

اسْتَلْقَاهُ - ابْتَلَاهُ - اَلْقَاهُ - لِقَاهُ

أَفْعَلُ. The elative, like the imperfect, has only two syllables :—

عُلِّيَ عُلْيَا أَعْلَى higher, etc.

In the feminine the radical 'w' is usually changed to 'y', so the *a:* is indicated by *alif* to avoid the repetition of 'y'.

Similarly عُمِيَ - عَمِيَاءُ blind أَعْمَى

غَنِيَ - قَوِيَ becomes فَعِيلُ

فُعُولَ by assimilation becomes مَضَى infinitive of

يَمْضِي مَضَى.

Further assimilation occurs occasionally :—

قَسِي قَسِي plural of عَصَا is the form فُعُولَ as is قَسِي

the irregular plural of قَوْسٌ bow (weapon).

مَفْعَلٌ. Place nouns always have 'a' in the second syllable :—

الْمَنَاجِي - مَنَاجٍ place of safety, refuge. Plural

Note.—The elative أَغْلَى has probably been influenced by the IV stem. The passive participles are inflected for number as follows :—

dual	مُصْطَفَيَانِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ
plural	مُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفِينَ

### Vocabulary 26

أَخَذَ u. أَخْذٌ take.	حَوَّطَ IV surround.
نَسِيَ نِسْيَانٌ forget.	فَقَّرَ IV make poor.
جَمَعَ i. جَمْعٌ gather, جُنَايَةٌ commit a crime.	بَغَضَ IV hate, dislike.
هَجَّأَ u. هَجَاءٌ lampoon.	حَقَّ X deserve.
غَنَّى IV make rich, self-sufficient.	قَلَّ i. قِلٌّ be little.
لَهَّوْهُ u. لَهْوٌ play.	—X think little, be independent
غَزَا u. غَزْوٌ raid, go to war.	سَادَاتُ سَادَةٍ prince, chief.
بَكَى i. بُكَاءٌ weep.	اخْتَارَ VIII make, choose.
نَهَى a. نَهْيٌ forbid.	عِمَامَةٌ (عَتَائِمُ) turban.
وَلَّى i. وَلِيٌّ be near.	قَلَادَةٌ (قَلَائِدُ) necklace.
— IV do a kindness.	عَصَبَ i. عَصَبٌ fold, tie.
	حَصَى IV count.

غنى X be self-sufficient.

لهو IV distract attention.

كفى i. كِفَايَةً be sufficient for.

شرى VIII buy.

بَقَاءٌ بَقِيَ remain.

هَي VIII let oneself be forbidden, desist.

ولى II make one governor.

فقر VIII be poor, in need

جاء i. جَاءَ come.

رَكَضَ u. رَكَضَ run.

مَعْرُوفٌ known, kind act.

قل IV make little, support.

مَعَمَّ wearing a turban.

### Exercise 51

إِذَا اتَّخَذْتُمْ عِنْدَ رَجُلٍ يَدًا فَأَنْسَوْهَا - لَا خَيْرَ فِي  
 الْمَعْرُوفِ إِذَا أُحْصِيَ - سَتَرَ رَجُلٌ مَا أَوْلَى وَنَشَرَ  
 مَا أَوْلَى - الْعَرَبُ تَقُولُ سَيِّدٌ مَعَمَّ يُرِيدُونَ أَنْ  
 كُلَّ جِنَايَةٍ يَجْنِيهَا أَحَدٌ مِنْ قَوْمِهِ مَعْصُوبَةٌ بِرَأْسِهِ -  
 لِمَا لَا تُطِيلُ الْهَجَاءُ قَالَ يَكْفِيكَ مِنَ الْقِلَادَةِ  
 مَا أَحَاطَ بِالْعُنُقِ - الَّذِي أَرْضَاهُ لَا يَجِئُنِي  
 وَالَّذِي يَجِئُنِي لَا أَرْضَاهُ - أَغْنِنِي بِالْأَفْتِقَارِ إِلَيْكَ  
 وَلَا تُفْقِرْنِي بِالْإِسْتِغْنَاءِ عَنْكَ - إِنْ مَا قَلَّ وَكَفَى  
 خَيْرٌ مِمَّا كَثُرَ وَالْهَى - مَا لَكَ لَا تَعْزُو فَقَالَ

لَا بُغْضُ الْمَوْتِ عَلَيَّ فِرَاشِي فَكَيْفَ أَمْرُ إِلَيْهِ  
رَكْضًا - اشْتَرِ التَّمْرَ مِنَ الْمَوْصِلِ وَأَحْمِلْهُ إِلَيَّ  
الْبَصْرَةَ فَإِنَّكَ تَهْلِكُ مَالَكَ .

## 52

I will square (be sufficient for) him for you — whatever I forget, I shall not forget your friendliness — did you buy what you needed? — daughter, take what I give you and buy what you like — the women wept for the slain — those who weep now shall laugh — I think they will remain in (on) their present condition — let no play distract you from your studies — I forbade her and she stopped (let herself be forbidden) — their (masc. and fem.) attention was diverted from what they were making — the caliph, may God preserve him, does not forget to reward those who deserve it.

## LESSON 27

## VERBS DOUBLY WEAK

These verbs are regular according to both the classes to which they belong, except for occasional aberrations. The pronunciation is easy though the writing may cause difficulty. Here follow a few typical verbs.

## Hollow and Hamza

Root اول 'return'

أَلْ يَوُؤْلُ أَلْتْ آلْ

Root جـي 'come'

جِي يَجِيْ يَجِيْ جِئَ جَاءَ

The active participle is الْجَائِ جَاءَ

Hamza and third 'y'

آتَى 'come': the perfect is regular.

Imperfect يَأْتِي jussive يَأْتِ imperative اِيتِ and فَاتِ.

رَأَى 'see': the perfect is regular.

In the imperfect the hamza is dropped:—

يَرِيْنَ يَرُونَ يَرِيَانِ تَرِيْنَ

As in رَضِيَ the second feminine singular has the same form as the second feminine plural.

In IV the hamza is also dropped:—

perfect أَرَيْتَ أَرَتَ أَرَى

imperfect يَرُونُ تَرِيْنَ يَرِيْ

jussive يَرِ imperative اَرِ

The active participle I رَاءٌ and IV مُرٍ .

Infinitive I رُؤْيَةٌ or رَأَى ; IV إِرَاءَةٌ .

In verbs third weak with 'w' or 'y' as second radical the second is usually treated as a strong consonant.

حَيَّ 'live' is irregular in places.

I may be treated as a doubled verb حَيَّ .

II. The infinitive is like that of a doubled verb with the feminine ending as compensation تَحْيِيَّةٌ .

X, when it means 'be ashamed', may be shortened :—

perfect اسْتَحْيَتْ - اسْتَحْيَ

imperfect يَسْتَحْيُونَ - يَسْتَحْيِي

First 'w' and third 'y'

وَفَّى 'accomplish, fulfil'; the perfect is regular :—

imperfect يَفِيْنَ يَفُونَ يَفِيَانِ يَفِيْنَ يَفِيْ

imperative فَيْنَ فُوا فِيْ فِ

active participle وَفَاً infinitive أَلْوَفِيْ - وَافِ

A weak form can only be identified by grammar and common sense.

دعا must be singular and must come from يدعو .

يدعوا is plural and may be يدعوا from دعا or يدعوا from ودع .

يجد may come from وجد and be any form of the imperfect ; it may be يجذ or يجذ jussive I or IV from يجد ; and it may be يجذ or يجذ jussive of جد or جدى .

فيه may mean ' in it ', ' of his mouth ' or ' accomplish it ', imperative singular feminine of وفى .

### Vocabulary 27

وصى IV make a will, give a dying charge.      نجز u. نجز finish off, fulfil.

شاء a. مَشِيَّة wish, will.

حيى II greet.

عوى a. عوى be weary.

كرم IV honour.

وقى i. وقاية guard.

علم statecraft, clemency, kindness.

عفا u. عفو pardon, refrain ; be abundant.

ness.

قدر amount, measure.



وَصِيَّةٌ will, testament.	ودع IV deposit.
شُكٌّ suspicion.	نَفَعَ a. نَفْعٌ be useful to.
وَعَى i. وَعَى contain, understand.	وهم VIII suspect.
عِي IV fatigue, distress.	حُلَى (حُلَى) jewels.
وَقَى VIII be on one's guard, fear,	أَبَدًا (with a negative) never.
be pious.	سَهْمٌ (c) arrow, share.
ودع II say good-bye.	سَمَكٌ (sing. سَمَكَةٌ) fish.

## Exercise 53

قَالَ دَعْنِي أُوصِي فَقَالَ أَوْصِ - رَأَوْا أَرْأَءَ  
 الْفَلَاسِفَةِ - أَمَا تَسْتَحْيِي أَنْ يَكُونَ هَذَا قَدَرِ حِلْمِكَ  
 عَنِ ابْنِكَ - إِذَا لَمْ تَسْتَحْ فَاصْنَعْ مَا شِئْتَ - مَا  
 لَكُمْ تَسْمَعُونَ وَلَا تَعُونَ - أَغْنَوْهُ وَكَانَ قَلِيلَ الْوَفَاءِ  
 لَهُمْ - أَرَاكَ اللَّهُ فِي بَيْتِكَ مَا أَرَى أَبَاكَ فِيكَ  
 وَأَرَى اللَّهُ بَيْتَكَ فِيكَ مَا أَرَاكَ فِي أَيْتِكَ - كَانَ  
 إِذَا وَعَدَ الْخَيْرَ وَفَى وَإِذَا أَوْعَدَ أَخْلَفَ وَعَفَا - آثَرُ  
 مَا تَلَقَّاهُ غَدًا عَلَى مَا لَا تَرَاهُ أَبَدًا - كُنْتُ أَجِدُ  
 مَنْ يَعِدُ وَيَنْجِزُ فَقَدْ أَغْيَانِي مَنْ يَعِدُ وَلَا يَنْجِزُ -

اسْتَحْيَيْتُ مِنْهُ وَبَعَثْتُ إِلَيْهِ بِالْحُلِيِّ - حَاجَتُكَ  
عِنْدَنَا فَآتِ مَنَزْلَكَ فَإِنَّهَا سَتَأْتِيكَ - لِيَقِ أَحَدُكُمْ  
وَجْهَهُ النَّارَ - يُؤَلِّي الْخَلِيفَةُ مَنْ يَشَاءُ.

54

he told them to bring their books — what do you think of Egypt? — these women, will they perform what they have promised? — be on your guard against suspicion — they greeted us politely — show me how that will benefit me — ask the keeper to show you what the boxes contain — fear God and honour the king — I prefer that men should fear me than that they should fear God — bring me my share of the food and I will eat it by the river — did you not all see what your aunt wrote? — much study wearies the young.

## LESSON 28

### CONDITIONAL AND EXCEPTIVE SENTENCES

The two main types of conditional sentences have been mentioned in Lesson 13. There are, however, many irregularities. Besides **إِنْ** the following words follow the same rules :—

**أَيْنَ** - **حَيْثُ** ; **أَيُّ** which of ; **مَا** that which ; **مَنْ** he who ;  
**كُلَّمَا** whenever ; **كَيْفَ** how ; **مَتَى** when ;  
**إِذَا** when.

مَا أَنْسَ لَا أَنْسَ

whatever I forget, I shall not forget . . .

كَيْفَ قَضَيْتَ فَعِنْدَهُ أَخْطَأْتُ

however you decide, in his opinion you will be wrong.

The apodosis must be introduced by **فَ** when it is :—

1. A nominal sentence.

إِنْ قُلْتَ هَذَا فَأَنْتَ مِنَ الْكَافِرِينَ

if you say this you are of the infidels.

2. A sentence beginning with an incomplete verb, such as **لَيْسَ** or **عَسَى**, one of the particles **سَ** - **سَوْفَ** - **قَدْ** or one of the negatives **لَنْ** - **مَا**.

إِنْ تَسْتَغْفِرْ لَهُمْ فَلَنْ يَغْفِرَ اللَّهُ لَهُمْ

if you ask pardon for them, God will never pardon them.

3. A verbal sentence expressing a wish or command.

أَيُّهُمَا شِئْتُمْ فَبَايَعُوا

do homage to which of the two you will.

4. When a perfect in the apodosis has to keep its meaning as a past tense.

إِنْ كَانَ قَمِيصُهُ قُدَّ مِنْ قُبُلٍ فَصَدَقَتْ

if his shirt is torn in front she has told the truth.

A condition may also be expressed by an imperative and a jussive :—

قَفِيْ اُخْبِرْكَ

stand, let me tell you = if you wait I will tell you.

قُمْنْ عَنْهُ يَقُلْ بِحَاجَتِهِ

stand away from him, he will speak of his need = if you stand back he will say what he wants.

إِمَّا follows the same rules as إِنَّ but is often followed by the energetic.

وَإِنْ often means ' even if '.

If the condition is improbable, لَوْ is used in place of

إِنْ; the same rules apply for tenses but the use of the simple imperfect is more common.

سَيَذْكُرُونَنِي لَوْ قَدْ جَرَّبُوا الْعُمَالِ بَعْدِي

they will remember me should they have experience of governors after me.

لَوْ is also used to express an impossible wish :—

لَوْ كَانَ يَنْفَعُ إِلَّا نَظَارُ

if only postponement were of some use.

إِلَّا ' if not ' is often used elliptically ; an example is the best explanation :—

إِنْ قَبِلْتَ رَأْيِي وَإِلَّا خُبْتُ

if you accept my opinion (all will go right), but if (you do) not, you will be disappointed.

لَوْ لَا is also used elliptically:

لَوْ لَا الشَّمْسُ بَرَدَتْ الْأَرْضُ

but for the sun the earth would grow cold.

A sentence following لَوْ لَا is usually introduced by  
أَنَّ or أَنَّ .

Exceptions.

The most common word for these is إِلَّا . When the main sentence is affirmative, the noun after إِلَّا is accusative unless, of course, it is governed by a preposition.

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا the tribe came except Zaid.

فَرَضَ لِابْنَاءِ الْبَدْرِيِّينَ أَلْفَيْنِ أَلْفَيْنِ إِلَّا حَسَنًا وَحُسَيْنًا

he allotted to the sons of those who fought at Badr (Lesson 31) two thousand apiece except Hasan and Husain.

When the exception comes before the main noun the accusative is used.

لَمْ يَكُنْ إِلَّا غَالِبًا مَيِّتٌ يَقْرَى

no dead man except Ghalib gave hospitality.

When the sentence is negative, actually or virtually, the exception is in the same case as the main noun.

مَا مَرَزْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ

I passed by no one except Zaid.

When the sentence is negative and the main noun lett out, the exception is in the case the main noun should have.

مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا أُمْرَأَتُهُ only his wife came.

مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ I passed only Zaid.

مَا يَخْدَعُونَ إِلَّا أَنْفُسَهُمْ

they deceive only themselves.

مَا كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ إِلَّا يَهُودِيًّا

Ibrahim (Abraham) was only a Jew.

When the exception is of a different sort from the main noun, the accusative is used. One feels sometimes that this is a desperate attempt to bring the facts of language under rule.

مَا لَهُمْ بِهِ مِنْ عِلْمٍ إِلَّا اتِّبَاعَ الظَّنِّ

they have no knowledge of it but the following of fancy.

إِلَّا is often used loosely.

قَدْ أَذَرَ كَنِي الْمَوْتُ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا

death almost overtook me.

لَا يَبْقَى حَيًّا إِلَّا مَاتَ

no living one remains without dying.

مَا شَعَرْتُ بِهِ إِلَّا وَقَدْ أَحْتَمَلَنِي

I did not perceive him except he had picked me up = the next thing I knew was that he had carried me.

'Only.' As we have just seen, this is often expressed by

إِلَّا with a negative. It can also be expressed by

إِنَّمَا; the word excepted is put at the end of the sentence.

إِنَّمَا عَلِيٌّ شُجَاعٌ

Ali is only brave (has no other good qualities).

إِنَّمَا شُجَاعٌ عَلِيٌّ the only brave man is Ali.

Note.—The addition of مَا to أَنْ makes no difference to its meaning.

# Vocabulary 28

بقى X preserve, keep alive.	شبه III resemble.
تَابَ u. تَوْبَةً repent.	X ask to repent.
سَلَكَ u. سُلُوكٌ go.	جلس III sit with.
فوض III be partners, discuss.	نَكَحَ i.a. نِكَاحٌ marry.
صَلَحَ u. صِلَاحٌ be good, service- able.	III make peace with.
— IV repair, restore.	عَبَأَ a. عَبَأٌ (with negative) ignore.
كَدَّ u. كَدٌّ work hard, persevere.	عَمَّ u. be general, concern many.
يَسَرَ i. يَسْرٌ be easy, easy-going.	بِرٌ goodness, filial piety.
— IV become rich.	II make easy.
فَيْصُ (فَيْصَانٌ) shirt.	فَضْلٌ excellence, superiority.
حَرِيصٌ eager, greedy	يَتُّ (a) verse of poetry.
خَطَا حِطِيٌّ sin.	بطؤ IV make slow, do slowly.
يقظ IV wake up (trans.).	IV make a mistake.
	X wake up (intrans.).

## Exercise 55

إِنْ لَمْ تَقْتُلْهُ لَا تَزَوِّجْنَهُ فَيَكُونُ قَدْ قَتَلَ أَبَاكَ وَنَكَحَ  
أُمَّكَ فَقَتَلَهُ - لَوْ كَانَ الْبُخْلُ قَمِيصًا مَا لَبِسْتُهُ وَلَوْ  
كَانَ طَرِيقًا مَا سَلَكَتُهُ - إِنْ كَانَ رِزْقِي فِي السَّمَاءِ  
فَأَنْزِلْهُ وَإِنْ كَانَ فِي الْأَرْضِ فَأَخْرِجْهُ وَإِنْ كَانَ



بَعِيدًا فَقَرَّبَهُ وَإِنْ كَانَ قَرِيبًا فَيَسِّرْهُ - إِذَا جَالَسْتَ  
 الْعُلَمَاءَ فَكُنْ عَلَى أَنْ تَسْمَعَ أَحْرَصَ مِنْكَ عَلَى  
 أَنْ تَقُولَ - لَوْلَا أَنْ أَفْعَالَهُ لَا تُوجِبُ الْعَفْوَ عَنْهُ  
 لَكَانَ حَقِيقًا بَأْ لَا سْتَبْقَاءَ لِهَذَا الْفَضْلِ - مَا الْعِزُّ  
 إِلَّا تَحْتَ ثَوْبِ الْكَدِّ - لِمَ لَا تُطِيلُ الْهَجَاءَ قَالَ  
 لَمْ أَجِدِ الشَّعْرَ السَّائِرَ إِلَّا بَيْتًا وَاحِدًا - أَوْدَعَ  
 ذَلِكَ الْمَالَ رَجَالًا فَذَهَبُوا بِهِ إِلَّا يَهُودِيًّا - مَا  
 جِنْتُ إِلَّا فِي أَمْرِ يَخْصُ الْوَزِيرَ وَيَخْصُنِي لَمْ تَصْلُحْ  
 مِفَاوِضَتُهُ فِيهِ إِلَّا عَلَى خَلْوَةٍ شَدِيدَةٍ - لِكُلِّ دَاءٍ  
 دَوَاءٌ إِلَّا الْمَوْتَ - مَا أَنْتَ بِشَيْءٍ إِلَّا شَيْءٌ لَا يُعْبَأُ  
 بِهِ - هُمْ كُفَّارٌ يُسْتَبَاوُونَ فَإِنْ تَابُوا وَإِلَّا ضُرِبَتْ  
 أَعْنَاقُهُمْ.

he who has never made a mistake has never made anything — all the inhabitants came except your father — if you think that he is right, follow his example — if you find that

I have come on business which concerns myself alone and does not concern the whole people, send me away — it was only the sun's heat on my back which awakened me — wherever you live you will meet friends — none of the children resemble their father except Muhammad — if you believe in what he says, you ought to act according to it — he did not leave any act of filial piety without doing it — if you eat slowly, you will prolong your life — if he dies, his heirs will fight over the inheritance — but for him the army had perished.

## LESSON 29

## TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS

لَمَّا with the perfect denotes a definite event in the past and means 'when' or 'after'.

لَمَّا أَنْبَأَهُمْ بِأَسْمَائِهِمْ قَالَ

when he had told them their names he said . . .

لَمْ with the jussive means 'not yet' (Lesson 14).

متى 'when' is first an interrogative adverb.

متى تُسَافِرُ when will you travel ?

As a conjunction it is treated as a conditional particle.

إِذْ 'when' may be followed by the perfect or imperfect and usually refers to the past but often passes into 'because'.

لَوْ شَهِدْتُكَ إِذْ تَدْعُو تَمِيمًا

would that I had been with you when you summoned  
Tamim (a tribe).

قَدْ ظَلَمْتُمْ إِذْ حَبَسْتُمُوهُمْ

you did wrong when (because) you put them in prison.

It may be followed by a nominal sentence.

إِذَا 'when' refers to the future though the perfect is used with it ; it is often treated as a conditional particle.

إِذَا رَأَيْتَهُمْ تُعْجِبُكَ أَجْسَامُهُمْ

when you see them their bodies will please you.

Both إِذْ and إِذَا are used to introduce a fact which is not the direct consequence of what has gone before ; hence they often suggest the sudden or unexpected. إِذْ takes a verbal sentence after it and إِذَا (usually وَإِذَا or فَاِذَا) takes a nominal sentence :—

بَيْنَمَا الْعُسْرُ إِذْ دَارَتْ الْمَيْسِيرُ

while distress (is present suddenly) easy times come round.

نَظَرْتُ إِلَى الْمَقْتُولِ فَاِذَا هُوَ زَيْدٌ

I looked at the murdered man ; lo and behold, it was Zaid.

إِذَا may be construed with ب; two forms are possible :—

شَقَقْتُ الْعَصَا وَإِذَا بَدَنَانِيرِي  
شَقَقْتُ الْعَصَا وَإِذَا أَنَا بَدَنَانِيرِي

I split the stick and there were my dinars (and there was I with).

There is no real difference in meaning.

حَتَّى 'until' when temporal is used with the perfect or the imperfect indicative :—

زُرْتُكَ حَتَّى قِيلَ لَيْسَ لَهُ صَبْرٌ

I visited you until it was said, 'he has no patience' (self-control).

For حَتَّى 'so that' see Lesson 19.

It is also used to co-ordinate two statements and means 'then, later on'; an example is the best explanation :—

زَرَعْتُهُ حَتَّى أَشْتَرَيْتُ مِنْهُ بَقَرًا

I sowed it and then bought from it cattle.

I sowed and reaped the field and did this till I had gathered enough money to buy cattle.

يَيْنَمَا - يَيْنَمَا 'while' take either a verbal or a nominal sentence :—

يَيْنَا نَحْنُ نَرْقُبُهُ أَتَانَا

بيننا نرقبه أتانا

while we were on the look out for him he came.

Often combined with إِذْ .

يَيْنَا أَنَا فِي الْحَدِيثِ إِذْ قَدِمَ زَيْدٌ

while I was in talk, Zaid came.

مَا is used with the perfect but refers to the present with the sense 'as long as' :—

لَسْتُ ضَائِرَهَا مَا أَطَّتِ الْأَبِلُ

you cannot hurt it as long as camels grunt.

مَا دَامَ حَيًّا as long as he continues alive.

كَمَا يَفْعَلُ النَّاسُ ; 'as' كَمَا do as others do ;

it passes easily to a sense of time :—

كَمَا تَدْخُلُ سَلِّمْ salute as (soon as) you enter.

Note. كَمَا أَنْتَ stop where you are.

Many prepositions can be turned into conjunctions by combining them with **أَنْ** or **مَا**; **أَنْ** governs the subjunctive. **إِلَى أَنْ** until; **بَعْدَ أَنْ** after; **مَا قَبْلَ** before, etc.

## Vocabulary 29

<b>ثَارَ</b> u. <b>ثَوْرَ</b> be stirred up.	IV stir up.
<b>شَرِكَ</b> IV associate with (trans.).	VIII be associated with.
<b>لَزِمَ</b> and VIII be attached to, be necessary.	<b>أَلِمَ أَلِمَ</b> suffer pain.
<b>دَفَنَ</b> i. <b>دَفَنَ</b> bury.	<b>قَلَدَ</b> II put a necklace on, invest with.
<b>دَعَا</b> and X call, summon.	<b>سَرَّ</b> III whisper to.
<b>دَنَا</b> <b>دُنُوْ</b> be near.	<b>وَفَى</b> III arrive.
<b>مَضَى</b> <b>مَضَى</b> go, be past.	IV execute (order, etc.).
<b>عَدَا</b> <b>عَدُوْ</b> go, go against.	<b>طَرَدَ</b> u. <b>طَرَدَ</b> drive, drive away, round up.
<b>عَقَبَ</b> u. <b>عَقَبَ</b> come after.	III wager.
<b>رَهَنَ</b> a. <b>رَهَنَ</b> give a pledge to.	<b>عَاقِبَةُ</b> consequence.
<b>رَبِحَ</b> <b>رَبِحَ</b> make a profit, be profitable.	<b>نَوْعَ</b> (a) kind, sort.
<b>عَادَةُ</b> ( <b>عَادَاتُ</b> ) custom.	<b>جَنَازَةٌ</b> — <b>جَنَازَةٌ</b> funeral.
<b>وَزَرَ</b> ( <b>وَزَرَ</b> ) minister of state.	<b>وَزَارَةٌ</b> ministry.

## Exercise 57

عَلِمَ أَنَّهُ مَتَى رَدَّهْمُ ثَارَتْ فِتْنَةٌ لَا يَأْمَنُ عَوَاقِبَهَا  
 وَأَنَّ الرَّأْيَ يُوجِبُ الرِّفْقَ بِهِمْ - بَيْنَا نَحْنُ نَدْفِنُهُ إِذْ  
 حُمِلَتْ جَنَازَةٌ أُخْرَى - أَلِمْتُ أَلَمًا شَدِيدًا فَلَمَّا كَانَ  
 فِي اللَّيْلِ سَكَنَ أَلَأَلَمُ وَنِمْتُ - لَمَّا أَخْطَأَ آبَاءُكَ  
 لَمْ يُصِْبْ إِلَّا أَنْتَ - لَمَّا أُشْتَدَّ الْمَرَضُ عَلَيْهِ لَزِمَ  
 فِرَاشَهُ - مَا مَضَى عَلَى هَذَا إِلَّا دُونَ شَهْرٍ حَتَّى  
 أَسْتَدْعَى الْخَلِيفَةُ ابْنَ أَخِيهِ وَقَلَدَهُ الْوِزَارَةَ - إِنِّي  
 أَكَلِمُهُ فَإِذَا بِفَتْيَانٍ فَاسْتَدْنَى الْأَكْبَرَ مِنْهُمْ فَسَارَهُ  
 بِشَيْءٍ دُونِي وَدُونَ أَصْحَابِهِ - عَدَا مَعَهُ حَتَّى وَافِيََا  
 الْبَيْتَ كَفَرَسَى الرَّهَّانِ - لَمْ يَشْعُرْ صَاحِبَاهُ وَقَدْ  
 سَاءَ ظَنُّهُمُ وَتَخَوَّفَا عَلَيْهِ حَتَّى إِذَا هُمَا بِهِ يَطْرُدُ  
 الْأَيْلَ فَطَرَدَاهَا مَعَهُ - بَقِيَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ حَتَّى إِذَا  
 أَغْيَاهُ حَرَارَةُ الصَّيْفِ خَرَجَ إِلَى ضَيْعَتِهِ.

after they had shared in the work they shared in the profit — I have not yet received my share of the pay — when did you see anyone resembling him in face ? — he associated me with himself in his request to the government — when you go to a foreign country, adopt its customs — I asked the shopkeeper for fish and he had several kinds — when they gave me my share, I was not satisfied with it — poverty befell him and then his friends stood by him — when she saw that forbidding was useless, she wept — he was busy writing till, when he had written many pages, the whiteness of the paper tired his eyes — a promise, when fulfilment which makes it true does not accompany it, is like words with no meaning.

## LESSON 30

## NUMERALS

The numerals are the nightmare of a bankrupt financier.

1      أَحَدٌ fem. إِحْدَى is a pronoun.

وَاحِدٌ fem. وَاحِدَةٌ is an adjective.

Both these agree in gender with the noun to which they refer.

2      اِثْنَانِ construct اِثْنَا fem. اِثْنَانِ const. اِثْنَا  
oblique اِثْنَيْنِ construct اِثْنَى fem. اِثْنَيْنِ const. اِثْنَى

This is a noun which agrees in gender with the noun



numbered. Usually the dual takes its place but it is used in apposition for emphasis.

لَا تَتَّخِذُوا إِلَٰهَيْنِ اثْنَيْنِ do not choose two gods.

3-10. Used with the masculine : with the feminine :

3	ثَلَاثَةٌ	ثَلَاثُ
4	أَرْبَعَةٌ	أَرْبَعُ
5	خَمْسَةٌ	خَمْسُ
6	سِتَّةٌ	سِتُّ
7	سَبْعَةٌ	سَبْعُ
8	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	ثَمَانِيَا acc. ثَمَانٍ
9	تِسْعَةٌ	تِسْعُ
10	عَشْرَةٌ	عَشْرُ

These numerals are fully declined nouns, disagree in gender with the singular of the noun numbered, and put that noun in the genitive plural, if possible, a plural of paucity. (See below.)

ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ three men ; ثَلَاثُ نِسَاءٍ three women ;

When the thing numbered is definite, two constructions are possible :—

الرِّجَالُ الثَّلَاثَةُ or ثَلَاثَةُ الرِّجَالِ the three men.

Note.—The construct state of ثَمَانٍ is ثَمَانِي nom. and gen. ثَمَانِي acc.

Note.—ثَمَانِيَهُنَّ the eight of them = the eight women.

11-12.	Masc.	Fem.
11	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ
12	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ	(إِثْنًا) إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ
	oblique إِثْنَى عَشَرَ	إِثْنَتَى عَشْرَةَ

These numerals are not declined—except the part **إِثْنَا** and its variants. The noun is in the accusative singular. Both parts of the numeral agree in gender with the noun which is in the accusative singular.

Note the variations in the words for 'ten'.

13-19.	With masculine :	With feminine :
13	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ
14	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ

15	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ
16	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ
17	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ
18	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ
19	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ

These are indeclinable and govern the noun in the accusative singular. The unit disagrees in gender with its noun and with the ten.

20-30.

20	عِشْرُونَ	50	خَمْسُونَ	80	ثَمَانُونَ
30	ثَلَاثُونَ	60	سِتُّونَ	90	تِسْعُونَ
40	أَرْبَعُونَ	70	سَبْعُونَ		

These are ordinary external plurals and have the two cases; they take the thing numbered in the accusative singular.

In compound numbers between 21 and 99 the unit comes first.

100 مِائَةٌ (anomalous spelling) *mi'atun*. 200 is

ثَلَاثُ مِائَةٍ 300 (sometimes written ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ) مِائَتَانِ

with the hundred in the singular. مِائَةٌ puts its noun in the genitive singular.

1000 أَلْفٌ . Note أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ . The noun numbered is in the genitive singular.

Order of the numerals :—

ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَاثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ 3822.

### Ordinal Numbers.

	M.	F.		M.	F.
first	أَوَّلُ	أُولَى	sixth	سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ
second	ثَانٍ	ثَانِيَةٌ	seventh	سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ
third	ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ	eighth	ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ
fourth	رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ	ninth	تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ
fifth	خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ	tenth	عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ

These are ordinary adjectives and offer no peculiarities.  
11-19. These are indeclinable.

	M.	F.
11th	حَادِي عَشَرَ	حَادِيَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ
12th	ثَانِي عَشَرَ	ثَانِيَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ
13th	ثَالِثَ عَشَرَ	ثَالِثَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ

etc.

For higher numbers the cardinal forms are used.

Note the compounds with 'first':—

nom.	حَادٍ وَعِشْرُونَ	أَلْحَادِي وَالْعِشْرُونَ
gen.	حَادٍ وَعِشْرِينَ	أَلْحَادِي وَالْعِشْرِينَ
acc.	حَادِيًا وَعِشْرِينَ	الْحَادِي وَالْعِشْرِينَ
	حَادِيَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	etc.
	etc.	

Four of the broken plural forms أَفْعَالٌ - أَفْعُلٌ - فِعْلَةٌ are sometimes plurals of paucity, i.e. indicate a number less than ten. If a noun has two or more plurals and one of them is one of these four forms, it is used for numbers below ten.

بَقِيَ فِي السِّجْنِ شُهُورًا

he stayed in prison many months.

بَقِيَ فِي السِّجْنِ أَشْهُرًا

he stayed in prison a few months.

An undefined number between 3 and 10 is expressed by the noun بَضْعٌ (part): بَضْعُ رِجَالٍ a few men; بَضْعُ نِسَاءٍ a few women.

With larger numbers نَيْفٌ وَعِشْرُونَ is used: نَيْفٌ وَعِشْرُونَ twenty odd.

## Fractions.

$\frac{1}{2}$ . نَصْفٌ .

$\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{10}$  are expressed by أَفْعَالٌ (فُعْلٌ), e.g. ثُلُثٌ  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

Some fractions can be expressed by combinations of these words : ثُمْنٌ رُبْعٌ  $\frac{1}{3\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Others can only be expressed in words :—

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{سَهْمٌ مِنْ تِسْعَةٍ وَعِشْرِينَ سَهْمًا} \\ \text{قِطْعَةٌ مِنْ تِسْعٍ وَعِشْرِينَ قِطْعَةً} \end{array} \right\} \frac{1}{9\frac{1}{2}}$$

## Distributives.

These may be expressed by repeating the numeral :—

فَرَضَ عَلَيْهِمُ اَلْفَيْنِ اَلْفَيْنِ he allotted them 2,000 apiece.

## Time.

The day begins at sunset so the Arabs often count by nights : صُمْتُ عَشْرًا I fasted 10 nights (days).

لَيْلَةٌ as عَشْرًا is feminine.

Note.—هُوَ ابْنُ اَرْبَعٍ or اَرْبَعُ سِنِينَ he is four years old.

## Vocabulary 30

عجل II hasten, do quickly.	فَتَيَاتٌ (فَتَيَاتٌ) young woman.
تَمَّ i. تَمَّ be complete, perfect.	II, IV complete.
حَدَثَ u. حَدُوثٌ be new, happen.	سَكَّ u. سَكَّ doubt.
— IV make new, produce.	صَغَّرَ II make little.
سَمِلَ u. سَمَلًا and سَمِلَ be common	حدث II tell.
to, concern ; VIII surround,	حدث V, VI talk, converse.
consist of (عَلَى).	زَلَزَلَةٌ earthquake.
عَدَّ i. عَمَدٌ support, direct oneself	دَجَاجَاتٌ (دَجَاجَاتٌ) fowls, hens.
towards.	بِضَاعَةٌ (بِضَاعَةٌ) goods, merchan-
شَرَكٌ polytheism.	dise.
دَيْكٌ (b) cock.	عَنَاءَةٌ عَنْى mean.
عُمُرٌ (a) life, age.	فُتُوَى counsel's opinion.
خَفِيَ خَفَاءٌ be hidden.	مَعْنَى meaning, idea.
فَتَى IV give counsel's opinion.	سَكَوَى شَكَا complain.

## Exercise 59

بَقِيتُ فِي بِلَادِ الشَّرْكِ أَرْبَعَةَ أَشْهُرٍ وَاحِدًا عَشَرَ  
يَوْمًا - اشْتَرَتُ دَيْكًا وَاحِدًا وَخَمْسَ دَجَاجَاتٍ -  
اشْتَمَلَ قَافِلَتُهُ عَلَى مِائَةِ إِبِلٍ وَخَمْسَةِ وَعِشْرِينَ  
حِمَارًا - وُلِدَ فِي سَنَةِ أَلْفٍ وَتِسْعِمِائَةٍ وَاثْنَتَيْنِ

وَتِلَاثِينَ - دَامَتِ الْحَرْبُ سِتِّينَ وَنِصْفَ سَنَةٍ - يَأْخُذُ  
 الْحُكُومَةُ الْعُشْرَ مِنْ كُلِّ بَضَائِعِ التُّجَّارِ الَّذِينَ  
 يَدْخُلُونَ بِلَادَهَا مِنَ الْخَارِجِ - مَا أَكَلْتُ مِنْهُ  
 ثَلَاثَ شَيْئًا فَأَرِيدُ أَنْ تُقِيمَ عِنْدِي لِنَآكُلَ وَتَحَدَّثَ -  
 كَانَ مَوْتُهُ قَبْلَ الزَّلْزَلَةِ الْكَبِيرَةِ بِسِتِّينَ - هُوَ ابْنُ  
 خَمْسٍ وَسِتِّينَ سَنَةً - لَا يَتِمُّ الْمَعْرُوفُ إِلَّا بِثَلَاثِ  
 تَعْجِيلِهِ وَتَصْغِيرِهِ وَسْتَرِهِ .

## 60

there are 72 kinds of dates — she is 17 years old — that chief was the father of his tribe, he had 16 sons and 12 daughters — she cut the meat into 12 shares — the guests went away by twos — he travelled for 19 days, crossing 3 rivers and climbing 7 mountains — forgive him 70 times — my messenger arrived three hours after me — his daughter inherited one-sixteenth of his property — he is the seventh son of a seventh son.

## LESSON 31

## NOUN FORMS

Every word form has its special meaning, sometimes more than one.

فَعِيلٌ is commonly an adjective but it is also an infinitive and a broken plural.



فَعَلَةً as an infinitive denotes the doing of the action once, whatever form the ordinary infinitive may have :—

نَصَرَهُ اللَّهُ نَصْرَةً God helped him (gave him victory) once

infinitive نَصَرَ

فَرَّ فَرَةً he ran away once

infinitive فَرَّ

فَعَلَةً as an infinitive denotes the doing of the act in a certain manner :—

هُوَ حَسَنُ الْكِتَابَةِ he is good in (his style of) writing

infinitive كِتَابَةً

قُتِلَ قِتْلَةً سَوْءً he was killed horribly infinitive قَتَلَ

مَشَى مَشْيَةَ الْمَرِيضِ he walked like a sick man

infinitive مَشَى

فَعَالٌ denotes one who follows a trade or does something habitually. Examples have been given in Lesson 4. It is also used as an emphatic :—

كَذَّابٌ a great liar

Noun of place or time.

مَفْعَلٌ - مَفْعِلٌ When the characteristic of the imperfect is 'u' or 'a' the noun is مَفْعَلٌ . مَطْبَخٌ kitchen; مَخْرَجٌ exit.

There are a few exceptions ; the commonest are—

مَسْكِنٌ dwelling house ; مَسْجِدٌ mosque.

مَفْعِلٌ is used when the characteristic of the imperfect is 'i':—

مَقْصِدٌ goal ; مَنَزِلٌ house, stage (of a journey) ;

مَوْضِعٌ place.

Note.—The 'a' in the imperfect is due solely to the guttural.

Roots middle 'w' have forms like مَقَامٌ place.

Those middle 'y' have forms like مَقِيلٌ place of the siesta.

Roots first 'w' have also a variant : مَوْلِدٌ - مِيلَادٌ birthday ; مِيقَاتٌ - مِيعَادٌ appointed time.

Roots third weak have always 'a' in the second syllable (Lesson 26).

In the derived stems of all verbs the passive participle is used as the noun of place : مُسْتَشْفَى hospital.

مَفْعَلٌ may also be used as a noun of action (practically an infinitive) and as a concrete noun :—

مَقْدَمٌ arrival ; مَطْلَبٌ object, thing looked for ;

مَرْكَبٌ carriage, ship, riding beast.

Noun of instrument.

مِفْعَلَةٌ - مِفْعَالٌ - مِفْعَلٌ may express this :—

مِكْنَسَةٌ broom ; مِفْتَاحٌ key ; مِبْرَدٌ file (tool) ;

مِقْرَاضٌ - مِقْصَصٌ scissors ; مِيزَانٌ scales.

Diminutive.

كَلْبٌ - كَلْبٌ - كَلْبٌ a little dog, puppy. It is often used as a form of endearment ; very common is بُنَى my little son.

Relative adjectives.

Adjectives can be made from most nouns by adding *iiyun* feminine *iiyyatun* to the noun. If the noun has the feminine ending *at* it is dropped and a long second syllable is shortened. There are many irregularities.

رَجُلٌ بَلَدِيٌّ town, village ; رَجُلٌ بَلَدِيٌّ a country bumpkin

مِصْرِيّ Egypt; مِصْرِيّ an Egyptian

مَدِينِيّ town الْمَدِينَةُ al-Medina; مَدَنِيّ a townsman,  
a man from al-Medina

مَكِّيّ Mecca; مَكِّيّ a man from Mecca

قُرَشِيّ Quraish (Muhammad's tribe); قُرَشِيّ a man  
of the tribe.

These adjectives are very common in modern Arabic.

أَصْلِيّ (أَصُول) root, principle. فَرْعِيّ (فُرُوع) branch.

أَصْلِيَّةٌ مسألةٌ a problem involving first principles.

فَرْعِيَّةٌ مسألةٌ a question of detail.

The feminine is used as an abstract noun :—

كَيْفَ how? كَيْفِيَّةٌ quality: كَمْ how much? كَمِيَّةٌ  
quantity.

Broken plurals.

فَعَالٌ - فَعَالَةٌ are common as plurals of the  
active participle of Stem I.

فُعُلَةٌ is plural of the active participle of Stem I of verbs  
third weak: قَاضٍ قُضَاةٌ judge.

فَعَالٍ is plural of فَعْلَى and فَعْلَى (p. 147).

فَتَاوِ virgin عَذَارٍ : فتوى a legal opinion .

فَعَالِي is plural of the same three forms and of فَعْلَانُ :—

حَيَّارِي perplexed حَيْرَانُ : كَسَالِي - كَسْلَانُ

and of فَعِيلَةٌ from verbs third weak :—

مَطِيَّةٌ riding مَنَآيَا fate مَنِيَّةٌ : هَدَايَا gift هَدِيَّةٌ animal مَطَايَا .

Other plurals are فَعْلَانُ - فَعْلَاءَةٌ - فَعْلَةٌ - فَعْلٌ .  
فَعْلَى - فَعْلَانُ .

مَفَاعِيلُ sometimes becomes مَفَاعِلَةٌ .

Second declension.

The grammarians give many rules for finding whether a noun belongs to this declension or not ; it is simpler to trust to memory. To it belong :—

Some forms of the broken plural ;

All proper names which are feminine in form or belong to women (few exceptions) ;

Most foreign names of men, **إِبْرَاهِيمُ** Abraham ;

Some native names, especially those which resemble verbs, **يَزِيدُ** Yazid ;

All proper names with a suffixed *an*, **نُعمَانُ** *Nuṣman* ;

The adjectives **أَفْعَلُ** and **فَعْلَانُ** ;

All nouns ending in *au*, **صَحْرَاءُ** desert.

Secondary roots.

These commonly have the radical ' t '.

**إِثْمٌ** ' suspicion ' from **وهم** through **تُهْمَةٌ**

**إِتْقَى** ' piety ' from **وقى** through **تَقْوَى**

**وَلَدٌ** ' born in the house, ancestral ' from **تَلِيدٌ**

### Vocabulary 31

**حَرَقَ** u. **حَرْقٌ** tear, rend.

**مِغْبَرٌ** ferry.

**جَرَبَ** II test.

**مَخَاضٌ** ford.

**بَرَدَ** u. **بَرْدٌ** file.

**مَسْمَعٌ** place from which is heard,  
ear.

**عَبَرَ** u. **عُبُورٌ** pass over, cross.

**مَأْمَنَةٌ** place of safety.

**تَعَبَ** **تَعِبَ** be tired.

**مَبْعَثٌ** time of sending, mission.

**تَعَبَانٌ** tired.

مُسْرِقٌ east, sunrise.

دُط (with negative) ever.

شَيْطَانٌ devil.

دَقَّ u. دَقَّ hit, pound.

شهر VIII be well known.

زول IV remove.

سَهَرٌ سَهَرٌ be wakeful at night.

أَرَخَ II date.

تَأْرِيخٌ history.

مُنْحَلٌ sieve.

مَسْأَلَةٌ question, problem.

غَسَلَ i. غَسَلَ wash.

مَأْسَدَةٌ place where lions are  
plentiful.

مَغْرِبٌ west, sunset.

جَمِيعٌ (collected) together,

all.

نَظَفَ II clean.

## Exercise 61

جَلَسَ جَلِيسَةُ التَّعْبَانِ - أَسَمِعْتَ مِثْلَ هَذَا قَطُّ قَالَ لَا مَا  
 خَرَقَ مَسَامِعِي قَطُّ مِثْلَهُ - ضَرَبَ مُوسَى الْحَجَرَ ضَرْبَةً  
 وَيَخْرُجُ مَاءٌ يَكْفِي الْقَوْمَ جَمِيعًا - أَخْرَجَتْ صَاحِبَةُ  
 الْبَيْتِ اللَّصَّ تَضْرِبُهُ بِالْمِكْنَسَةِ - أَسْمِعُوهُمْ كَلَامَ  
 اللَّهِ وَأَبْلِغُوهُمْ مَا أَمَرْتَهُمْ - سَافَرْنَا مَنَازِلَ وَبَلَّغْنَا  
 مَأْسَدَةً نَخَافُ فِيهَا عَلَى خَيْلِنَا - فَلْنَذْكُرِ الْآنَ  
 التَّأْرِيخَ مِنْ مَوْلِدِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ إِلَى مَبْعَثِهِ - جَرَّبُونِي

بِمَسَائِلَ لَمْ أَفْهَمْ مِنْهَا شَيْئًا - عَبَرْنَا النِّهْرَ بَعْضُنَا  
 فِي مِعْبَرٍ وَبَعْضُنَا بِمَخَاضَةٍ - كَانَ أَحْفَظَ النَّاسِ  
 لِمَا سَمِعَ وَأَقْلَهُمْ نَوْمًا وَأَصْبَرَهُمْ عَلَى السَّهْرِ .

## 62

his name is famous in the east and the west — the thief came in like a lion and went out like a sheep — all his children swim like fish — as long as life remains I shall not leave the battle field — the child cut off his finger with the tailor's scissors — he washes his dog twice daily — reason is to a man a file with which he files the roughness of the heart, a broom with which he removes evil deeds, a mallet with which he bruises the head of the devil, and a sieve with which he cleans his thoughts — the Syrian boasts of the snow and fruits of his mountains and the Egyptian of the water of his river — the carpenter must not be ignorant of the qualities of the different kinds of wood.

## LESSON 32

## SOME VERBS

Quadriliteral roots.

Verbs from these roots have two stems like II and V of the strong verb but with two different instead of the middle radical doubled. A common type is a group of two consonants reduplicated.



perfect.      imperfect.      imperative.      infinitive.

دَحْرَجَ - دِحْرَاجٌ      دَحْرَجْ      يُدَحْرِجُ      دَحْرَجَ  
roll (trans.)

تَدَحْرُجُ      تَدَحْرَجْ      يَتَدَحْرَجُ      تَدَحْرَجَ  
(intrans.)

There is nothing peculiar about weak verbs :—

يُدْهِي - دَهْدَى - دَهْدَى or دِهْدَاءُ - دَهْدَ - يُدْهِي - دَهْدَى

Impersonal expressions.

The passive cannot be used absolutely, it must be qualified by a prepositional phrase :—

سِيرَ إِلَى الْعِرَاقِ there has been a going to Irak.

The result is that there seem to be a lot of superfluous prepositions and pronouns.

أُخْتَلِفَ فِيهِ there has been a difference about it.

الْمَسْأَلَةُ الْمُخْتَلَفُ فِيهَا the question under discussion.

الْمَرْغُوبُ فِيهِ the thing liked ;

الْمَرْغُوبُ عَنْهُ the thing disliked.

غُشِيَ عَلَيْهِ it was covered upon him = he fainted.

غُشِيَ عَلَيْهَا she fainted.

الْمَغْشَىٰ عَلَيْهِ the man who fainted.

الْمَغْشَىٰ عَلَيْهَا the woman who fainted.

سَقَطَ فِي يَدِهِ it was fallen into his hand = he repented.

هُوَ مَسْقُوطٌ فِي يَدِهِ he is repenting.

الشَّجَرَةُ الْمَنْهِيَّةُ عَنْهَا the forbidden tree (nom.)

الشَّجَرَةُ الْمَنْهِيَّةُ عَنْهَا (acc.) الشَّجَرَةُ الْمَنْهِيَّةُ عَنْهَا (gen.)

Auxiliary verbs.

Several verbs, of which the commonest are جَعَلَ - أَخَذَ

a. جَعَلَ 'make', are used with a following imperfect in the sense of 'begin':

جَعَلَ يَتَكَلَّمُ he began to talk.

Verbs of thought and feeling.

These may govern two accusatives; the causative may even govern three:—

أَرَاكَ أَفْعَالَكَ خَبِيثَةً

he showed you that your deeds were evil.

They may be used parenthetically; so you can say both

أُظُنُّ الْحُسَيْنَ شَجَاعًا - أُظُنُّ الْحُسَيْنُ شَجَاعٌ

I think Husain is brave.

With a verbal sentence following three constructions are possible :—

أُظَنُّ أَنَّ عُمَرَ يَبْنِي بَيْتًا

أُظَنَّ يَبْنِي عُمَرُ بَيْتًا - أُظَنَّ عُمَرَ يَبْنِي بَيْتًا

I think that Umar is building a house.

‘Can.’

The imperfect alone may be used.

انْتَهَى الْأَمْرُ إِلَى وَقْتِهِ الْمَحْدُودِ الَّذِي لَا يَدْفَعُهُ دَافِعٌ

the affair went on to its allotted time which no pusher can push back (postpone).

قَدَرْتُ قَدَرَ ‘be strong, able’ may be used or قَدَرَ u.i.

يَقْدِرُ أَنْ يَمْشِيَ - يَقْدِرُ عَلَى الْمَشْيِ

he can walk.

لَنْ نَقْدَرَ عَلَيْهِ الْعُقُوبَةَ we can never punish him.

طَوَّعَ X of اسْتَطَاعَ.

أَمَّا تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَكْفِينَا هَذَا

can you not arrange this for us?

لَنْ يَسْتَطِيعَ مَعِيَ صَبْرًا

he will never be able to have patience with me,

مكن IV. The action is the subject and the agent the object :—

لَا يُمَكِّنُهُ النَّهْوضُ he cannot get up.

(نهض 'stand up' as a preliminary to action.)

طوق IV and وسع can also be used :

لَمْ يُطِقْ مِنَ الْوَجَعِ أَنْ يَرْكَبَ بَعِيرًا وَلَا دَابَّةً  
he could ride neither camel nor horse because of the pain.

هَذَا كَذَابٌ أَوْ جَهُولٌ لَا يَسْعَنِي قَبُولُهُ

he is a liar or grossly ignorant, I cannot accept him.

'Must.'

لَا بُدَّ مِنْ there is no separation from (for loss of nunation see Lesson 14).

أَخْبَرَهُ بِحُضُورِ قَوْمٍ لَا بُدَّ مِنْ وُصُولِهِمْ

he told him of the presence of people, there was no escape from their arriving (were on the doorstep and must be admitted).

This phrase may be followed by a sentence introduced by <sup>أَنَّ</sup> مَنْ ; the مَنْ may be omitted :—

لَا بُدَّ [مِنْ] أَنْ تُحَدِّثَنِي بِمَا بَيْنَكُمَا

you must tell me what is between you two.

‘be necessary’ and ‘stick to’ also have the meaning ‘must’. The subject of both verbs may be a noun or a sentence with أَنْ:—

وَجَبَ عَلَيْهِ الْتَّهْوُضُ he had to stand up ;

لَزِمَهُ أَنْ يَصْحَبَنِي he had to accompany me ;

يَلْزِمُهُ الْأِسْتِفْهَامُ

he must ask questions (ask to understand).

### Vocabulary 32

قَضَا قَضَاءٌ judge, settle, finish.

بَرَأَ بَرَاءً be cured.

قَرَضَ IV lend.

حَلَّصَ u. حُلُوصٌ be pure

قَلَبَ II turn (trans.).

هَدَى هَدًى lead aright.

سَدَّ u. سَدَّةٌ attack, tie.

عَسَرَ IV be poor

وَلَّى wail.

فَعَلَبَ fox.

طَبِيعَةٌ nature.

جَنْبٌ (b) side.

وَتَأَقَّ bonds.

مَيِّتٌ dead.

زَمَنَ زَمَنٌ be paralysed.

II cure, acquit.

X ask a loan.

II make pure, save.

جَاعَ u. جُوعٌ be hungry.

لَطَفَ u. لُطْفٌ be kind.

نَقَمَ VIII punish.

طَاطَأَ bow (the head).

هَمٌّ (b) care, anxiety.

حَرَكَهٌ movement, vowel.

مَحْكَمَةٌ law court.

بَطِيخٌ water melon.

حَيٌّ alive.

زَلَزَلَ shake (trans.).

## Exercise 63

قَضَى الْقَاضِي عَلَى الْمُدَّعَى وَبَرَّاءَ الْمُدَّعَى عَلَيْهِمْ -  
 أَخَذَ يَسْتَقْرِضُ مِنْنِي وَأَقْرَضْتُهُ خَمْسِمِائَةَ دِينَارٍ لَا تَخْلَصَ  
 مِنْهُ - رَأَى ثَعْلَبًا ضَعِيفًا لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ الْحَرَكَةَ فَقَالَ  
 إِنَّ هَذَا الثَّعْلَبَ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَمُوتَ جُوعًا - إِهْدِنَا  
 الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ غَيْرِ  
 الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ - يُرِيدُ الْإِنْسَانُ  
 طَبِيعَةً الْأَشْيَاءِ الْمَنْهِيَّ عَنْهَا - تَنَازَعَ قَوْمٌ وَطَلَبُوا  
 مَرًّا يَقْضِي بَيْنَهُمْ وَلَمَّا سَأَلَ فِي أَمْرِ الْأُخْتِلَافِ  
 لَمْ يَصِفُوا لَهُ الْمُخْتَلَفَ فِيهِ - ثُمَّ يُطَاوِئُ الْكَافِرُونَ  
 رُءُوسَهُمْ خَوْفَ مَا يَرَوْنَ وَيُؤَلُّوْنَ - لَا يُمْكِنُكُمْ  
 الدِّفَاعُ عَنْ نَفُوسِكُمْ فَيَلْزَمُكُمْ التَّسْلِيمُ - الْمَصَائِبُ  
 حَالَةٌ لَا بُدَّ مِنْهَا فَمِنْهَا مَا يَكُونُ رَحْمَةً مِنَ اللَّهِ  
 وَلُطْفًا بِعَبْدِهِ وَمِنْهَا مَا يَكُونُ انْتِقَامًا - كُنْ مُوسِرًا  
 إِنْ شِئْتَ أَوْ مُعْسِرًا لَا بُدَّ فِي الدُّنْيَا مِنَ الْهَمِّ .

carry the boy who has fainted to the hospital — the defendant is in court but where is the plaintiff? — a girl was paralysed for about 15 years; she could not turn from side to side nor could anyone else turn her — I did not think that he could have mentioned me when there was a summons for me — as long as you had the price of this melon on you you could not hold back your desire (soul) from it — I am left with my bonds fast on me — we had to pay that to him — my own perceptions are enough for me — how is your husband? she said, not alive that he could be hoped for and not dead that he could be forgotten — you cannot give what you have not.

### LESSON 33

#### SOME NOUNS

Accusative as vocative.

A noun in the vocative when qualified by a genitive or a prepositional phrase is put in the accusative:—

يَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ { Abdullah! (a common name).  
servant of God.

يَا سَاعِدًا فِي الْجِبَالِ climber of mountains.

Note that أَيُّهَا cannot be used before a construct state because it must be followed by the definite article.

Construct state before a sentence.

A noun may govern a sentence in the genitive; usually it is a noun of time in the adverbial accusative.

شَهَادَةٌ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

the confession that there is no god but God.

هَذَا يَوْمٌ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ

this is the day when the truthful will profit by their truthfulness.

وُلِدْتُ لَيْلَةَ قُبُضِ النَّبِيِّ

I was born the night the prophet was taken (died).

فَرَّ خَوْفَ أَنْ يُعَذِّبَهُ الْعَامِلُ

he fled for fear the governor would punish him.

خَوْفَ is the accusative of cause.

كَأَنَّ

This is a compound of أَنْ and follows the same rules, meaning 'as if'.

كَانَ النَّاسُ كَأَنَّهُمْ يُكَذِّبُونَنِي

the people were as if they did not believe me (seemed not to).

It may be a complete sentence in itself, when it must be translated 'it is as if':—

كَأَنِّي أَنْظُرُ إِلَى الدِّمَاءِ بَيْنَ الْعَمَائِمِ

it is as if I were looking at the blood (pl.) between the turbans (and necks).



Note the expressions :—

كَأَنِّي بِكَ تُخَادِعُنِي

it seems to me that you are deceiving me.

كَأَنِّي بِكَ قَتِيلًا I think I see you slain.

(قَتِيلًا accusative of accompanying circumstance.)

Attraction.

This occurs in a kind of relative clause. To understand the construction, it helps to think of two separate sentences of which the second consists of a noun and adjective with a pronoun referring back to the noun in the first. Instead of using a relative link, the order of the second sentence is inverted and the adjective made to agree in case with the noun of the first sentence.

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا - أَبُوهُ حَسَنٌ

I saw a man ; his father is handsome.

The combined sentence becomes :—

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا حَسَنًا أَبُوهُ

I saw a man whose father is handsome.

The adjective agrees in gender with its own noun and in case with the principal noun.

مَرَرْتُ بِأَمْرَأَةٍ حَسَنٍ أَبُوهَا

I passed a woman whose father is handsome.

سَافَرْتُ مَعَ رَجُلٍ حَسَنَةِ أَخْلَاقِهِ

I travelled with a man whose character was good.

Is the principal noun definite, the adjective is definite also :—

نَظَرْتُ إِلَى الرَّجُلِ الْحَسَنِ أَبُوهُ

I looked at the man whose father is handsome.

فِي الْحُلَلِ الْمُضَاعَفِ نَسْجُهَا

in the garments which are double woven.

When the predicate of the subordinate sentence is a noun, inversion happens only exceptionally.

مَرَرْتُ بِحَيَّةٍ ذِرَاعٌ طُولُهَا

I passed a snake the length of which was a cubit.

لَقِيتُ رَجُلًا سَوَاءٌ عَلَيْهِ الْخَيْرُ وَالْشَّرُّ

I met a man to whom good and evil are alike.

‘Enough.’

This may be expressed by the verb كَفَى or by the noun حَسْبُ which usually has a pronominal suffix :—

حَسْبُكَ مِنْ عَيْبِ أَبِيكَ

your father is disgrace enough for you.

حَسْبُكَ جُودًا أَنْ يَكُونَ كَهَاتِمٍ

it is generosity enough for you that he should be like Hatim.

It may be used absolutely and means 'only'.

إِنَّمَا كَانَ الرِّيَاسَةُ لَهُ بِبَيْتِ الْمَقْدِسِ حَسْبُ لَا  
غَيْرَ ذَلِكَ

authority was his in Jerusalem alone and nowhere else.

### Vocabulary 33

سَبَقَ u. سَبَقَ precede, come in	III race.
first.	صلو II say the ritual prayers.
ظَلَمَ i. ظَلَمَ do wrong.	IV be dark.
قَسَوُ قَسَا be hard.	III find hard, oppressive.
هَمَّ VIII pay attention to, think	بيض II whiten.
important.	جَلَبَ u. جَلَبَ come, bring, drive.
عَظُمَ عَظُمَ be big.	II honour.
حَقَرَ i. حَقَرَ and VIII despise.	بَرَكَهَ blessing.
بَرَكَ III (with على) bless.	هَدَايَا ( هَدِيَّةٌ ) gift.
زَرَعَ زَرَاعَةٌ agriculture.	فُطْنٌ cotton.
زَمَانٌ ( أَزْمَنَةٌ ) time, period.	عَارٌ defect, disgrace.
دُعَاءٌ ( أَدْعِيَةٌ ) prayer, petition.	عِشَاءٌ evening.
فَجَّرَ dawn.	عَشَوُ V eat the evening meal.
غَدَوُ V eat the morning meal.	فَطَرَ u.i. فَطَرَ break one's fast.

## Exercise 65

رَأَيْتُ الْفَقِيرَ مُحْتَقَرَةً حِكْمَتَهُ - سَأَغْسِلُ عَنِّي الْعَارَ  
 بِالسَّيْفِ جَالِبًا عَلَى قَضَاءِ اللَّهِ مَا كَانَ جَالِبًا -  
 قَدْ عَلِمْتُ لَأَمْرُ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ أَعْظَمُ بَرَكَاتٍ مِنْ أَمْرِي -  
 كَأَنَّكَ بِالْحُسَيْنِ مُقْبِلًا - خَافَ الْجَيْشُ مِنْ الْمَوْتِ  
 حَتَّى كَانَ قُلُوبَ أَكْثَرِهِمْ هَوَاجًا - تَقُولُ قَوْلَ الَّذِي  
 لَيْسَ الْوَفَاءُ لَهُ خُلُقًا - لَقَدْ صَغَرَ عَبْدَ الرَّحْمَنِ فِي  
 عَيْنِي عِظَمُ الدُّنْيَا فِي عَيْنِهِ وَكَأَنَّهُ يَرَى السَّائِلَ إِذَا  
 أَتَاهُ مَلَأَكَ الْمَوْتِ - لَمْ يَكُنْ هَدَايَا السُّلْطَانِ  
 إِلَّا لِلْفُقَرَاءِ وَالْمَوْلَفَةِ قُلُوبُهُمْ - أَخْرَجْنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ  
 الْبِلَادِ الظَّالِمَ أَهْلَهَا - كَأَنِّي بِكَ تَتَجَاهَلُ - كُنْتُ  
 أَقَاسِي الزَّمَانَ طَوْلَ عُمْرِي حَتَّى لَا أَرْجُو الْيُسْرَ -  
 يَهْتَمُّ مَلِكُ مِصْرَ بِإِصْلَاحِ الزَّرَاعَةِ لَا سِيَّمَا الْقُطْنِ.

the worst man was born the night the best man died —  
 you seem not to like me — if you do it again, we shall  
 again make a lampoon on you the words of which travel

— hearer of prayer ! deliver me from what my enemies devise against me — it seems to me that you are betting on a horse which will not come in first in the race — the dressmaker showed us dresses of various colours — he who teaches an old man is as if he were making a black man white — I have not seen one of the caliphs to whom bloodshed was more distasteful than Hishām — he took an evening meal and no morning meal and this was enough for him for the space of forty years.

## LESSON 34

### EXCLAMATIONS

Admiration and its opposite are expressed by two defective verbs نِعِمَّ 'how good' (نِعْمَ u. نِعْمَةٌ be well off) and بُئْسَ 'how bad' (بُؤْسٌ u. بُؤْسٌ be badly off). The thing approved is the subject of the verb.

1. It must be definite or a sentence.

نِعِمَّ الرَّجُلُ عَمْرُو what a fine chap Amr is.

بُئْسَ مَا صَنَعَ عُمَرُ what a shocking thing Umar did.

2. The subject may be accompanied by an accusative of nearer definition.

نِعِمَّ الْحَسَنُ رَجُلًا how good is al-Hasan as a man.

Less general ideas are expressed by two forms of Stem IV

أَفْعَلِ ب and مَا أَفْعَلْ .

مَا أَكْرَمَ عَلِيًّا how generous Ali is.

أَعْظَمَ بِالْحَارِثِ قَدْرًا how strong al-Harith is.

When IV cannot be made from the ideas wanted, words like أَشَدَّ are used as with adjectives of defects and colours.

Thus the sentence

تَسْتَقْبِحُ النُّفُوسُ الْكَرِيمَةُ الظُّلْمَ

noble souls abhor wrongdoing

becomes

مَا أَشَدَّ مَا تَسْتَقْبِحُ النُّفُوسُ الْكَرِيمَةُ الظُّلْمَ

how violently the noble souls abhor wrongdoing.

The second مَا with its verb is equivalent to أَنْ with the subjunctive and both can be replaced by an infinitive with the same meaning.

مَا أَشَدَّ اسْتِقْبَاحَ النُّفُوسِ الْكَرِيمَةِ الظُّلْمَ

Admiration is also expressed by the phrase اللَّهُ دَرُّ with a pronoun.

دَرٌّ is the flow of milk from the udder and the words imply that the man and his flocks are under the special protection of God. Then the use was generalized. Two constructions are possible :—

لِلَّهِ دَرُّهُ فَارِسًا what a fine horseman he is.

لِلَّهِ دَرُّهُ مِنْ خَطِيبٍ what a fine speaker he is.

‘Beware.’

إِيَّاكُمْ وَالْكَلْبَ beware of the dog.

وَقَتْلَهُ إِيَّاكُمْ beware of killing him.

و here is the و of accompaniment which takes the accusative, as in :

مَشَيْتُ وَالنَّيْلَ I walked beside the Nile.

Prepositions used idiomatically.

هَلْ لَكَ فِي الْمَاءِ الْبَارِدِ would you like some cold water

دُونَكَ الدَّرَاهِمَ take the dirhams; دُونَكُهُ take it.

عَلَيْكَ حَارِثَةَ seize Haritha (a man's name).

عَلَيَّ بِهِ bring him to me.

لَا عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ

there is no (harm) to you that you do = do as you like.

بِاللَّهِ عَلَيْكَ I implore you by God.

Oaths.

With nouns **وَ** is the commonest particle; it takes the genitive :—

وَاللَّهِ by God; وَرَبِّ الْكَعْبَةِ by the lord of the Kaaba;

وَحَيَاتِكَ by your life.

**لَ** is used with the nominative of **عَمْرٌ** (note the vocalization):

لَعَمْرُكَ by your life; لَعَمْرُ اللَّهِ by the life of God.

When a verb is present, **بَ** is usual:

أَقْسَمْتُ بِاللَّهِ I swear by God; but

نَشَدْتُكَ اللَّهُ I adjure you by God.

When the oath confirms a statement of fact it usually makes no change in the sentence.

When the oath confirms an intention, various things may happen.



If the intention is positive the energetic is used with لَ :

وَاللّٰهُ لَا سِرْنَ by God, I will go.

If negative, لَا with the perfect is used :

وَالله لَا عَصَيْتَ رَبِّي

by God you shall not disobey my lord.

The negative may be omitted and then the imperfect is used :

قُلْتُ يَمِينَ اللّٰهُ أَبْرَحُ قَاعِدًا

I said, the oath of God, I shall not cease sitting.

أَلَّا with the perfect may be used in an affirmative sense :

أَقْسَمْتُ عَلَيْكَ إِلَّا لَبِسْتُ دِرْعِي

I adjure you, put on my coat of mail.

سَأَلَهُ بِالصُّحْبَةِ إِلَّا حَدَّثَهُ

he besought by (their good) fellowship, tell him.

This construction may be explained from the Old Testament oath : The Lord do so to me and more also if I do not = I will do.

Verbs of fear, hindrance, etc.

When these verbs are followed by أَنْ with the sub-

junctive, لَا may be inserted after أَنْ without changing the sense :—

مَا مَنَعَكَ أَنْ تَسْجُدَ  
 مَا مَنَعَكَ أَنْ لَا [أَلَا] تَسْجُدَ

} what prevented you from bowing down.

## Vocabulary 34

- كَسَبَ i. كَسَبَ and VIII earn, حُمِقَ folly.  
 earn a living. عَطَشَ thirst.  
 عَجَزَ i. عَجَزَ be weak, unable. IV weaken, incapacitate.  
 عَجَبَ and V wonder. IV please.  
 فَرِغَ u.a. فَرِغَ be empty. II empty.  
 عَدِمَ be without, not to have. غَفَلَ u. غَفَلَ neglect.  
 عَدِمَ have. سَمَّ u. سَمَّ smell.  
 عَدِمَ II explain. امر VIII consult together.  
 رَوَى be satisfied with drink. حُرَّ freeborn.  
 عَذَرَ i. عَذَرَ excuse, accept an excuse. VIII excuse oneself.  
 نَصِيرَ helper. مَوْلَى master, servant, freedman,  
 عَطَشَانُ thirsty. cousin.  
 رَائِحَةٌ scent. غَلِيظٌ rough, difficult.  
 عُرْيَانُ naked. أَحْتَقَ foolish.  
 عُرْيَانُ opportunity

## Exercise 67

إِيَّاكُمْ وَمَسْأَلَةَ النَّاسِ فَإِنَّهَا آخِرُ كَسْبِ الرَّجُلِ -  
 مَا أَشَدَّ مَا يَغْتَسِلُ - نَسَأَلُكَ بِاللهِ إِلَّا حَفِظْتَ فِينَا  
 وَصِيَّةَ رَسُولِ اللهِ - بِئْسَ مَا أُتِمِرُوا - إَعْلَمُوا أَنَّ  
 اللهَ مَوْلَاكُمْ نِعَمَ الْمَوْلَى وَنِعَمَ النَّصِيرُ - يَا مُصْغَبَ  
 الْخَيْرِ الْكَرِيمِ جُدُّوهُ - مَا أَغْفَلَهَا عَمَّا يَخْصُ  
 نَفْسَهَا وَمَا أَشْغَلَهَا بِمَا يَخْصُ غَيْرَهَا - مَا أُعْطِشَ  
 الْوَلَدَ عَجَزْتُ عَنْ إِرْوَائِهِ - إِيَّاكُمْ وَالَّذِينَ يَعْتَذِرُونَ -  
 أَقْسَمْتُ أَيْمَانًا غَلِيظَةً لَا عَطِشَ مَا دُمْتُ حَيًّا -  
 أَعْجَزَنِي عَنْ إِعَانَتِهِ أَنِّي عَدِمْتُ الْمَالَ وَالْفُرْصَةَ .

what a fine swimmer that boy is — what a liar he is! and the wonder is that every one believes him — how thirsty the child is! I filled three cups of milk for him and he emptied the lot — how quickly the enemy come upon us — when the waters were cut off from them they said, you have destroyed us. He said, you have reached the water, how near you are to it — you are a bad husband for a freeborn woman — by him in whose hand is my

soul, he shall sleep naked in the snow — by the lord of the Kaaba, explain to me your letter — by God, the slayer of a Muslim shall not smell the scent of paradise — I must let you know that you are the fool not I.

## LESSON 35

## CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES, ETC.

An attendant circumstance may be expressed by one word in the accusative (Lesson 15) or by a clause (Lesson 8). This clause may refer to any part of the main sentence; the noun to which it refers is usually definite. The clause may be linked up by a pronoun, by 'and', or by both.

نَهَضَ مَحْمُودٌ لِلسَّفَرِ وَالْمَطَرُ وَقَعَ

Mahmud stood up (started) on the journey while rain was falling.

رَأَيْتُ خَالِدًا عَصَاهُ فِي يَدِهِ

I saw Khalid with his stick in his hand.

خَرَجُوا مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ وَهُمْ أُلُوفٌ

They came out of their tents in their thousands.

Attraction can occur:

صَعِدَ مَسْلَمَةُ فِي السَّطْحِ بَاكِيًا أَبَاهُ

Maslama went up to the roof while his father was crying.

Indirect speech.

There is little indirect speech as there are no tenses. Pronouns and verbs may be put in the third person, but there is often a mixture of direct and indirect speech.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{أَمَرَهُ أَنْ يُبْنِيَ جِسْرًا} \\ \text{أَمَرَهُ أَنْ يَبْنِيَ جِسْرًا} \end{array} \right\} \text{he told him to build a bridge.}$$

$$\text{كَتَبَ إِلَى عُمَرَ أَنَّ سَعْدًا أَسْتَعْمَلَهُ عَلَى جَبَايَةِ} \\ \text{الْخَرَاجِ وَقَدْ أَحْبَبْتُ الْجِهَادَ}$$

he wrote to Umar that Saad had appointed him (the writer) to collect the tribute but I wanted to go to the front.

There is no change in an indirect question.

$$\text{أَسْأَلُكُمْ هَلْ يَقْتُلُ الرَّجُلُ الْحُبَّ}$$

I ask you if love kills a man.

Alternative sentences.

$$\text{أَوْ} \text{ or. Used in statements and question ; it need not be repeated.}$$

$$\text{إِمَّا - إِمَّا} \text{ either — or. Used in statement or question.}$$

The clauses may be treated as parts of conditional sentences.

$$\text{هَلْ} \text{ or } \text{أَمْ} \text{ or. Used only in questions preceded by } \text{أَمْ} \text{ or } \text{هَلْ}.$$

أَخْدِجَةُ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ فَاطِمَةُ

is Khadija with you or Fatima ?

The answer to the question must be one of the two names.

Words construed like إِنَّ.

(لِئَنَّ) لِأَنَّ - فَإِنَّ for, because.

لَكِنَّ but. The shortened form لَكِنْ makes no change in the following sentence.

لَيْتَ would that. Common is لَيْتَ شِعْرِي would that I knew.

Genitive.

رُبَّ many a . . . is followed by an indefinite noun in the genitive singular and may be continued by any sort of sentence.

رُبَّ أُمْرَأَةٍ عَارِيَةٍ فِي الدُّنْيَا كَاسِيَةٍ فِي الْآخِرَةِ

many a woman naked in this world is clothed in the next.

Note that an active participle is sometimes used where a passive would be expected.

وَ with the genitive is used in the same way.

Emphasis.

أَمَّا . . . أَمَّا is followed by a nominative

absolute and the sentence is introduced by **ف**. It may be translated 'as for'.

أَمَّا السَّفِينَةُ فَكَانَتْ لِمَسَاكِينَ يَعْمَلُونَ فِي الْبَحْرِ

as for the ship, it belonged to poor men who worked on the sea.

Subjunctive.

When the main clause says that an event may happen, a subordinate clause describing a consequence of it is

introduced by **ف** or **و** with the subjunctive.

لَيْتَ لِي مَالًا فَأَتَصَدَّقَ بِهِ

would that I had money so that I might give it in alms.

أَوْ 'unless,' 'until' is followed by the subjunctive.

مَا.

This can be added to a number of words without changing their meaning, e.g. **أَيْنَمَا** while ; **يَيْنَمَا** wherever.

أَنَّمَا does not govern the accusative.

It can also be added to nouns in any case to make them more indefinite.

مِنْ لَوْنٍ مَا of some colour or other.

## Vocabulary 35

عَمِلَ do, make, be a governor.	X appoint, use.
بَدَلَ u. بَدَلٌ change, exchange.	عَمِلَ (a) work, list.
فَصَرَ u. فَصْرٌ be inadequate.	مِنْشَقَّةٌ towel.
خَلَا u. خَلَاءٌ be empty, pass away.	هَضَمَ i. هَضَمَ digest.
سَكَلَ u. سَكَلٌ and IV be involved, difficult.	II make empty, leave.
فَضَلَ u. فَضْلٌ be in excess.	مَلَكَ i. مَلِكٌ possess, be king.
حَدَاثَةٌ newness, youth.	نَشَفَ II make dry.
عَهْدٌ (b) agreement, treaty, time, period.	فَضِلَ u. be excellent.
نُورٌ (a) light.	دَهْرٌ epoch, age, time, fate.
دُخِيرَةٌ stores, treasure.	صَحَارٍ (صَحَارَى) desert.
	عَامِلٌ workman, governor.
	خُلُوَةٌ private place, privacy.
	قَدَرٌ God's decree, providence.

## Exercise 69

لَا أَذْخُلُ وَلَا أَنْصَرِفُ أَوْ تَرَكَبَ إِلَى الْمَسْجِدِ - إِمَّا  
 أَنَا أَسِيرُ إِلَى الشَّامِ فَمَا أَكْرَهُهُ وَإِمَّا أَنْ أَقِيمَ فَلِي  
 فِيهِ أَجْرٌ - نَزَعُمُ أَنْ تَفَاضَلَ النَّاسِ فِيَمَا بَيْنَهُمْ لَيْسَ  
 بِأَبَائِهِمْ وَلَكِنَّهُ بِأَفْعَالِهِمْ وَأَخْلَاقِهِمْ وَشَرَفِ نَفْسِهِمْ



وَبَعْدَ هِمَمِهِمْ - تَقُولُ الْعَرَبُ لِمَنْ سُئِلَ وَهُوَ لَا يَقْدِرُ  
 فَرَدَّ بَيْتِي يَبْخُلُ لَا أَنَا - خَلَوْتُ بِهَا وَالْقَمَرُ يُرِينِيهَا  
 فَلَمَّا غَابَ أَرْتِيهِ - لَا تَقُلْ فِيمَا لَا تَعْلَمُ فَتَسْتَهْمُ فِيمَا  
 تَعْلَمُ - لَا تَنْهَ عَن خُلُقٍ وَتَأْتِيَ مِثْلَهُ - لَا تَرْضَى  
 الْعَرَبُ أَنْ يَسْتَعْمِلُوكَ وَأَنْتَ مِنْ غَيْرِهِمْ - هَذَا الشَّعْرُ  
 شَيْءٌ كَانَ فِي الْحَدَاثَةِ قُلْتُهُ فِي زَوْجَتِي وَكُنْتُ إِلَيْهَا  
 مَائِلًا وَكَانَتْ لِي مَمْلُوكَةٌ وَلِقَلْبِي مَالِكَةٌ فَأَمَّا  
 الْآنَ فَلَا عَهْدَ لِي بِمِثْلِهِ مُنْذُ سِنِينَ وَلَا عَمِلْتُ شِعْرًا  
 مُنْذُ دَهْرٍ طَوِيلٍ .

would that my mother had not borne me and I had not seen the light of day — I was in hiding in her house and she came up to me every day to ask me what I wanted — he swore that he would not change this shirt unless he had finished the business of the man who had abused him — letters came to Mahmud when he was governor of Syria to collect us in the mosque and we should stop there till he had satisfied us — many who eat gratefully have a greater reward than those who fast — he told the girl to wash the clothes and dry them thoroughly — many a

desert have I crossed, many a treasure discovered, and many a difficulty solved — he asked me how old I was — would that you could go in, salute the prince, and tell him the truth of the affair so that his anger against us might cease — eat slowly so that you may digest the food thoroughly.

## LESSON 36

## PREPOSITIONS ; CALENDAR

مِنْ (originally a noun 'part') from, of, than.

بَاعَ مِنْهُ he sold to him ; قَالَ مِنْهُمْ some of them said.

عَنْ from (often in the realm of ideas).

الْهَرَبُ عَنْ قَضَاءِ اللَّهِ flight from God's decree.

قَالَ مَا قَالَهُ عَنْ حَسَدٍ he said what he said out of envy.

سَأَلَ عَنْهُ he asked about it.

إِلَى to, towards.

حَتَّى to, even. It cannot take suffixes.

أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسَهَا

I ate the fish up to the head.

أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسَهَا

I ate the fish, even the head (it has no governing power).

لِ to, for, belonging to.

فِي in, concerning.

قُتِلَ كَلَيْبٌ فِي نَاقَةٍ Kulaib was killed for a she-camel.

ثَلَاثَةٌ فِي خَمْسَةٍ three multiplied by five.

بِ by, at, in, with (instrumental).

جَاءَ بِهِ he brought it.

الْمَعْرُوفُ بِأَبِي الْحَسَنِ the man known as Abu l-Hasan.

أَرَغِبْتُ بِي عَنْهَا

do you take pleasure in me from her = do you think me too good for her?

مَعَ with (accompaniment).

عَلَى upon, on account of, in spite of, against. (In

Arabic you are always on a condition.)

عَالَى الْفُقْرِ in poverty.

عَلَى الرِّيقِ on the spittle = on an empty stomach.

لِي عَلَيْهِ دَيْنٌ to me on him a debt = he owes me money.

مَنْذُ since, for (time). It takes the nominative, genitive, or a sentence.

مَنْذُ يَوْمَانِ - مَنْذُ يَوْمَيْنِ for two days.

مَنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ - مَنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ since Friday.

مَنْذُ خُلِقَ since he was created (born).

The following are really nouns in the accusative ; many can be combined with مِنْ and are put in the genitive, unlike the corresponding adverbs.

نَحْوُ towards, according, about (not of place).

نَحْوَ قَوْلِهِ according to his saying (or, his ideas).

نَحْوَ عِشْرِينَ about twenty.

عِنْدَ beside, in the opinion of.

بَيْنَ between (usually repeated).

بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَهُ between me and him.

إِقْتَتَلُوا فِيمَا بَيْنَهُمْ they fought each other.

تَحْتَ under.

فَوْقَ over, above.

دُونَ below, between (as being an obstacle to the meeting of two things).

دُونَ الْجَبَلِ at the foot of the mountain.

قَاتَلَ دُونَهُمْ he fought in defence of them.

هَذَا دُونَ ذَلِكَ this is less than that.

هَذَا لِي دُونَكَ this is mine not yours.

قَبْلَ before (time). قُبَيْلَ a little before.

بَعْدَ after (time).

قَدَّامَ - أَمَامَ before (place).

وَرَاءَ behind (place).

حَوَالَى - حَوْلَ around (place).

مِنْ قَبْلِ (usually قَبْلَ) in possession of.

عَامِلٌ مِنْ قَبْلِ الْخَلِيفَةِ

a governor representing the caliph.

مَنْ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ your subordinates.

Many prepositions can be turned into conjunctions by joining them to أَنْ ; e.g. الى ان until.

### Calendar.

Days of the week.

يَوْمُ الْأَحَدِ Sunday

يَوْمُ الْخَمِيسِ Thursday

يَوْمُ الْاِثْنَيْنِ Monday

يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ Friday

يَوْمُ الْاِثْنَاءِ Tuesday

يَوْمُ السَّبْتِ Saturday

يَوْمُ الْاَرْبَعَاءِ Wednesday

Syrian Christian months.

كَانُونُ الشَّانِي January

تَمُوزُ July

شِبَاطُ February

آبُ August

أَذَارُ March

أَيْلُولُ September

نَيْسَانُ April

تِشْرِينُ الْأَوَّلُ October

أَيَّارُ May

تِشْرِينُ الثَّانِي November

حَزِيرَانُ June

كَانُونُ الْأَوَّلُ December

The Muslim year is lunar and has twelve months of alternately 29 and 30 days. The era begins from A.D. 621, the year of the prophet's removal from Mecca — **الْهِجْرَةُ**.

Names of the months.

1 مُحَرَّمٌ 5 جُمَادَى الْأَوَّلَى 9 رَمَضَانُ

2 صَفَرٌ 6 جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةُ 10 شَوَّالٌ

3 رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّلُ 7 رَجَبٌ 11 ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ

4 رَبِيعُ الْآخِرُ 8 شَعْبَانُ 12 ذُو الْحِجَّةِ

The usual way of dating within the month is by counting the first half from the beginning and the second half from the end. Rajab has 30 days :—

on the 1st.

غُرَّةَ رَجَبٍ - لِعُرَّةِ رَجَبٍ - لِأَوَّلِ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ رَجَبٍ -  
 لليلة خَلَّتْ [مَضَتْ] مِنْ رَجَبٍ - لِمُسْتَهْلٍ رَجَبٍ

on the 2nd.

لِلْمِائَتَيْنِ خَلَّتَا مِنْ رَجَبٍ

on the 3rd.

لِثَلَاثِ خَلَوْنَ [لِثَلَاثِ لَيَالٍ مَضَيْنَ] مِنْ رَجَبٍ

on the 20th.

لِعَشْرِ بَقِيْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ

on the 30th.

لِسَلَخِ رَجَبٍ - لِآخِرِ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ رَجَبٍ

Note.— غُرَّةٌ blaze on a horse's forehead.

مُسْتَهْلٌ from هِلَالٌ new moon.

سَلَخٌ skin.



## Vocabulary 36

حَسَبَ u. حِسَابٌ count	دَوَاوِينُ (دَوَاوِينَ) ministry of
حَصَرَ u. حُصُورٌ be present.	state, register, collected works
جَرَى i. جَرَيَانٌ run, flow.	of a poet.
زَهَّدَ زُهْدٌ leave, be content with	دَخَلَ revenue.
little, be ascetic.	حَسِبَ i. حِسْبَانٌ think.
سَهْوَةٌ and VIII desire.	جَادَ u. جُودَةٌ be generous.
نَجَا نَجَاءٌ be safe, escape.	حَذَرَ حَذَرٌ be on one's guard,
غنى IV make rich and inde-	be cautious.
pendent, enable one to dis-	قدر II estimate, imagine.
pense with ; (with negative)	عَزَوُ II console, condole.
be useless in the face of.	نَقَصَ u. نُقْصَانٌ be diminished,
عَصَى عَصِيَانٌ disobey.	imperfect.
نَفَقَةٌ expenditure.	جَوَادٌ liberal ; swift horse.
صِنَاعَةٌ handicraft, skill.	حَلِيفٌ ally.
خَلَقٌ old, worn out.	قِدْرٌ (fem.) (b) cooking pot.
صِفَافٌ (a) equal.	مَحَبَّةٌ love.
	خَرَجَ expenditure.

## Exercise 71

إِنِّي أُحِبُّكَ لِنَفْسِكَ فَوْقَ مَحَبَّتِي إِيَّاكَ لِنَفْسِي -  
 كَيْفَ تَجِدُكَ قَالَ أَجِدُنِي أَجِدُ مَا لَا أَشْتَهِي وَأَشْتَهِي  
 مَا لَا أَجِدُ لَقَدْ أَصْبَحْتُ فِي شَرِّ زَمَانٍ وَشَرِّ نَاسٍ

مَن جَادَ لَمْ يَجِدْ وَمَن وَجَدَ لَمْ يَجِدْ - قَدْ أَغْنَاكَ  
 اللَّهُ بِالْعُذْرِ مِنَّا عَنِ الْإِعْتِذَارِ وَأَغْنَانَا اللَّهُ بِالْمَحَبَّةِ  
 لَكَ عَنِ سُوءِ الظَّنِّ بِكَ - إِلَى مَن أَوْصَى بِكَ أَبُوكَ  
 قَالَ أَوْصَى إِلَى وَلَمْ يُوصِ بِى - يَا جَوَادَ اللِّسَانِ  
 مَن غَيْرِ فِعْلٍ لَيْتَ جُودَ اللِّسَانِ فِي يَدَيْكَ - لَكِنَّ  
 اللَّهُ نَجَّانِي بِكَ وَمَا عَزَّانِي أَحَدٌ بِأَنْفَعٍ مِّنْ  
 تَعَزِّيَّتِكَ - أَرْضِ أَخِي وَحَلِيفِي الَّذِينَ اشْتَرَكَا فِي  
 أَسْرِ الْأَسِيرِ - أَرَادَ سُلْطَانٌ بِنَاءَ قَصْرِ وَقَدَّرَ لِذَلِكَ  
 أُلُوفَ أُلُوفٍ دِرْهَمٍ وَزَادَتْ النِّفْقَةُ عَلَى التَّقْدِيرِ  
 أَضْعَافًا وَكَانَ يُطَالِبُ وَزِيرُهُ بِتَوْجِيهِ الْأَمْوَالِ  
 لِذَلِكَ مَعَ قُصُورِ الدَّخْلِ مِنَ الْخَرْجِ - كَانَ يَعْمِدُ  
 إِلَى مَن يَبِيعُ فِي الْأَسْوَاقِ مِثْلَ قِدْرِ وَقَمِيصٍ خَلَقَ  
 وَمَا يَغْلِبُ عَلَى الظَّنِّ أَنَّ مِثْلَهُ لَا يُبَاعُ إِلَّا مِنْ  
 ضَرِّ شَدِيدٍ وَإِلَى امْرَأَةٍ تَبِيعُ غَزَلَهَا عَجُوزٌ فَيُعْطِيهِمْ  
 أَضْعَافَ ثَمَنِهِ وَيَدَعُهُ عَلَيْهِمْ.

I do not know a value for these pieces of cloth and have never seen the like of them ; had I not actually seen them I should not have believed that their like existed ; were I to say that the price of each one is 100,000 dinars I should not fear being far wrong — by God, it was not in me to give her except 200 dirhams but God sent to her by my hand 200 dinars and I shall not go back on this ; give her — the minister despised the head of the ministry of finance (tribute), and when he wanted some statement or account from the ministry, he neglected the head, summoned the clerks and asked their advice in the head's presence ; when he wanted a statement which, he knew, the head's skill was not equal to, and about which he could not speak, he discussed it with him in the presence of others to make his insufficiency plain — the prophet said of women, consult them and oppose them (do the opposite). I disobeyed him and obeyed my wife ; I bought a slave and he became a thief — caution is useless in face of (does not dispense with) providence — what is asceticism in the world ? he said that what is forbidden does not overcome your patience and what is allowed your thankfulness — teach my sons swimming before writing ; for they can find one to write for them and cannot find one to swim for them.

## CONCLUSION

It is important to remember that Arabic is essentially simple however complicated it may be on the surface. When the meaning of a passage is not obvious at the first glance, make a literal translation giving each word its simplest meaning ; then this crude English will usually suggest the right sense. A chronicler writes :—

ثُمَّ دَخَلَتْ سَنَةٌ ٢٤٦ وَلَمْ يَجَرْ فِيهَا شَيْءٌ يُكْتَبُ

then came in the year 246 and a thing which is written did not run in it ; this explains itself.

Some phrases have exact parallels in English ; ' he came out against the government ' is quite general while ' he came out in '45 ' is particular.

For further study Wright's grammar (two vols.) is indispensable. That is the only definite recommendation which can be made at present ; the good books are out of print and too expensive or come from abroad and cannot be got. There is no satisfactory dictionary ; an old copy of Hava's Arabic-English can be recommended but not one of the newer reprints which are smudged.<sup>1</sup> Apart from this, the two volumes by Elias, Arabic-English and English-Arabic, are the most useful. The price of each volume to-day is probably over one pound. There is a smaller edition of the Arabic-English but the type is small.

Nicholson's series of readers (Cambridge University Press) is the best introduction to classical Arabic and each of the three books has a vocabulary. In spite of its name, it is probably better to begin with the second reader. The history entitled *al-Fakhri* is a fairly easy book, but the first chapter on politics should be left to the last. There is a French translation. The beginner should avoid the *Koran* although it can be bought cheaply and translations (Rodwell, Palmer) are available. The oriental editions are lithographed and are not easy to read ; the matter is often difficult because it is the record of the spoken word without the help of tone and gesture to make it intelligible. Consequently it is not typical of Arabic prose.

The *Arabian Nights* (Beirut, five vols. ; volumes can be had separately) is a good stand-by ; no translation corresponds exactly to this text. For modern Arabic any volume of Mahmud Taimur's stories can be recommended. *al-Ayyam* by Taha Husain, the story of the blind professor's childhood, is good reading and there is a translation, *An Egyptian Childhood* by Paxton.

Daily papers are hard to read when they have been folded. The Egyptian illustrated *al-muṣawwir* caters for various interests.

<sup>1</sup> A new edition is just out, clear and legible.

TABLE 1  
STRONG VERB—STEM 1—ACTIVE

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive	Jussive	Energetic	Imperative
sing.	كَتَبَ	يَكْتُبُ	يَكْتُبُ	يَكْتُبْ	يَكْتُبَنَّ	
3 m.	كَتَبَتْ	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبِ	تَكْتُبْ	تَكْتُبَنَّ	
f.	كَتَبْتَ	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبِ	تَكْتُبْ	تَكْتُبَنَّ	اَكْتُبْ
2 m.	كَتَبْتَ	تَكْتُبِينَ	تَكْتُبِي	تَكْتُبِي	تَكْتُبِينَ	اَكْتُبِي
f.	كَتَبْتِ	اَكْتُبُ	اَكْتُبِ	اَكْتُبْ	اَكْتُبَنَّ	
1 c.	كَتَبْتُمَا	اَكْتُبَا	اَكْتُبَا	اَكْتُبَا	اَكْتُبَا	
dual	كَتَبَا	يَكْتُبَانِ	يَكْتُبَا	يَكْتُبَا	يَكْتُبَانِ	
3 m.						

f.	كَتَبَا	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَا	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَانِ	أَكْتَبَا
2 c.	كَتَبْتُمَا	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَا	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَانِ	تَكْتَبَانِ	أَكْتَبْتُمَا
pl							
3 m.	كَتَبُوا	يَكْتَبُونَ	يَكْتَبُوا	يَكْتَبُونَ	يَكْتَبُونَ	يَكْتَبُونَ	يَكْتَبُونَ
f.	كَتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ	يَكْتَبْنَ
2 m.	كَتَبْتُمَا	تَكْتَبُونِ	تَكْتَبُوا	تَكْتَبُونِ	تَكْتَبُونِ	تَكْتَبُونِ	تَكْتَبُونِ
f.	كَتَبْتُنِ	تَكْتَبْنَ	تَكْتَبْنَ	تَكْتَبْنَ	تَكْتَبْنَ	تَكْتَبْنَ	تَكْتَبْنَ
1 c.	كَتَبْتُ	نَكْتَبُ	نَكْتَبُ	نَكْتَبُ	نَكْتَبُ	نَكْتَبُ	نَكْتَبُ

كَاتِبٌ  
Active participle

TABLE 2  
STRONG VERB—DERIVED STEMS

Active	II	III	IV	V	VI	
Perf.	كَتَبَ	كَاتَبَ	اَكْتَبَ	تَكَتَبَ	تَكَاتَبَ	تَكَوَتَبَ
Imperf.	يُكْتَبُ	يُكَاتَبُ	يُكْتَبُ	يَتَكَتَبُ	يَتَكَاتَبُ	يَتَكَوَتَبُ
Imp.	كُتِبْ	كَاتِبْ	اَكْتُبْ	تَكْتُبْ	تَكَاتِبْ	
Part.	مُكْتَبٌ	مُكَاتِبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ	مُتَكَتِبٌ	مُتَكَاتِبٌ	
Inf.	تَكْتِيبٌ	كَتَابٌ	اِكْتَابٌ	تَكْتِيبٌ	تَكَاتِيبٌ	
Passive						
Perf.	كُتِبَ	كُوْتُبَ	اُكْتُبَ	تُكْتُبَ		تُكُوْتُبَ
Imperf.	يُكْتَبُ	يُكَاتَبُ	يُكْتَبُ	يَتَكَتَبُ		يَتَكَوَتَبُ

Part.	مُكْتَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ
Active	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI
Perf.	اَنْكَبَ	اَكْتَبَ	اَحْمَرَ	اَشْكَبَ	اَحْمَارَ
Imperf.	يَنْكَبُ	يَكْتَبُ	يَحْمَرُ	يَسْتَكِبُ	يَحْمَارُ
Imp.	اَنْكَبِ	اَكْتَبِ	اَحْمَرِ	اَشْكَبِ	اَحْمَارِ
Part.	مَنْكَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ	مَحْمَرٌ	مُسْتَكِبٌ	مَحْمَارٌ
Inf.	اَنْكَبْتُ	اَكْتَبْتُ	اَحْمَرْتُ	اَسْتَكَبْتُ	اَحْمَرْتُ
Passive					
Perf.	اُنْكِبَ	اُكْتُبَ		اُسْتُكِبَ	
Imperf.	يُنْكَبُ	يُكْتَبُ		يُسْتَكِبُ	
Part.	مَنْكَبٌ	مُكْتَبٌ		مُسْتَكِبٌ	



TABLE 3  
STRONG VERB—STEM 1—PASSIVE

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive	Jussive
sing.	كُتِبَ	يُكْتَبُ	يُكْتَبُ	يُكْتَبْ
3 m.	كُتِبَتْ	تُكْتَبُ	تُكْتَبُ	تُكْتَبْ
f.	كُتِبَتْ	تُكْتَبُ	تُكْتَبُ	تُكْتَبْ
2 m.	كُتِبْتِ	تُكْتَبِينَ	تُكْتَبِي	تُكْتَبِي
f.	كُتِبْتِ	تُكْتَبِينَ	تُكْتَبِي	تُكْتَبِي
1 c.	كُتِبْتُ	أُكْتَبُ	أُكْتَبُ	أُكْتَبْ
dual	كُتِبَا	يُكْتَبَانِ	يُكْتَبَانِ	يُكْتَبَانِ
3 m.	كُتِبَا	يُكْتَبَانِ	يُكْتَبَانِ	يُكْتَبَانِ

ف. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا  
 2 c. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا

ف. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا  
 2 c. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا

ف. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا  
 2 c. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا

ف. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا  
 2 c. كَتَبَ      كَتَبُوا

f.

2 c.

pl.

3 m.

f.

2 m.

f.

1 c.

مَكْتُوبٌ  
 Passive participle

TABLE 4  
HOLLOW VERB—MIDDLE W—STEM 1

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive	Jussive	Energetic	Imperative
sing.	كَانَ	يَكُونُ	يَكُونُ	يَكُنْ	يَكُونُ	كُنْ
3 m.	كَانَتْ	تَكُونُ	تَكُونُ	تَكُنْ	تَكُونُ	كُونِي
f.	كُنْتَ	تَكُونُ	تَكُونُ	تَكُنْ	تَكُونُ	كُونِي
2 m.	كُنْتَ	تَكُونِينَ	تَكُونِي	تَكُونِي	تَكُونِي	كُونِي
f.	كُنْتِ	أَكُونُ	أَكُونُ	أَكُنْ	أَكُونِي	كُونِي
1 c.	كُنْتُ	أَكُونُ	أَكُونُ	أَكُنْ	أَكُونِي	كُونِي
dual	كَانَا	يَكُونَانِ	يَكُونَا	يَكُونَا	يَكُونَانِ	كُونَا
3 m.	كَانَا	يَكُونَانِ	يَكُونَانِ	يَكُونَانِ	يَكُونَانِ	كُونَا



TABLE 5  
HOLLOW VERB—MIDDLE Y—STEM I

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect		Energetic	Imperative
			Subjunctive	Jussive		
sing.						
3 m.	سَارَ	يَسِيرُ	يَسِيرَ	يَسِرْ	يَسِيرَنَّ	يَسِرْ
f.	سَارَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	تَسِيرَنَّ	تَسِرْ
2 m.	سَرْتَ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	تَسِيرَنَّ	تَسِرْ
f.	سَرْتِ	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي
1 c.	سَرْتُ	أَسِيرُ	أَسِيرَ	أَسِرْ	أَسِيرَنَّ	أَسِرْ

Active participle سَائِرٌ

## MIDDLE W OR Y—INTRANSITIVE FORM

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect		Energetic	Imperative
			Subjunctive	Jussive		
sing.	نَامَ	يَنَامُ	يَنَامَ	يَنَمْ	يَنَامَنَّ	نَامِي
3 m.	نَامَتْ	تَنَامُ	تَنَامَ	تَنَمْ	تَنَامَنَّ	نَامِي
f.	نَفَتَ	تَنَامُ	تَنَامَ	تَنَمْ	تَنَامَنَّ	نَامِي
2 m.	نَفَتَ	تَنَامِينَ	تَنَامِي	تَنَامِي	تَنَامِينَ	نَامِي
f.	نَفَتَ	تَنَامُ	تَنَامَ	تَنَامِي	تَنَامَنَّ	نَامِي
1 c.	نَفَتُ	أَنَامُ	أَنَامَ	أَنَمْ	أَنَامَنَّ	نَامِي

Active participle نَائِمٌ.

TABLE 6  
HOLLOW VERBS W OR Y—DERIVED STEMS

	IV	VII	VIII	X
Active				
Perf.	أَقَامَ	انْقَادَ	اخْتَارَ	اسْتَقَامَ
3 s. m.	أَقَمْتُ	انْقَدْتُ	اخْتَرْتُ	اسْتَقَمْتُ
2 s. m.	أَقَمْتَ	انْقَدْتَ	اخْتَرْتَ	اسْتَقَمْتَ
Imperf.	يَقِيمُ	يُنْقَدُ	يَخْتَارُ	يَسْتَقِيمُ
Imp.	اقِمْ	انْقَدْ	اخْترْ	اسْتَقِمْ
Part.	مَقِيمٌ	مُنْقَدٌ	مُخْتَارٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ
Inf.	إِقَامَةٌ	انْقِيَادٌ	اخْتِيَارٌ	اسْتِقَامَةٌ
Passive				
Perf.	أُقِيمَ	انْقِيدَ	اخْتِيرَ	اسْتَقِيمَ

Imperat.	Part.	STEM 1—PASSIVE			
		Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive	Jussive
		يَقَامُ مَقَامُهُ	يُقَادُ مُقَادُهُ	يُخْتَارُ مُخْتَارُهُ	يُسْتَقَامُ مُسْتَقَامُهُ
sing.					
3 m.		قِيلَ	يُقَالُ	يُقَالُ	يُقَالُ
2 f.		قِيلَتْ	تُقَالِينَ	تُقَالِي	تُقَالِي
pl.					
3 f.		قِيلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ
2 m.		قِيلْتُمْ	تُقَالُونَ	تُقَالُوا	تُقَالُوا



TABLE 7

## VERBS FIRST W AND Y

	IV	VIII	X
Active			
Perf.	أَوْعَدَ	اتَّعَدَ	اسْتَوْعَدَ
Imperf.	يُوعِدُ	يَتَّعِدُ	يَسْتَوْعِدُ
Imp.	اؤْعِدْ	اتَّعِدْ	اسْتَوْعِدْ
Part.	مُوعِدٌ	مُتَّعِدٌ	مُسْتَوْعِدٌ
Inf.	إِيعَادٌ	إِتِّعَادٌ	إِسْتِيسَارٌ
Passive			
Perf.	أُوْعِدَ	اتُّعِدَ	اسْتُوعِدَ

Imperf.	يُوْعِدُ	يُوسِرُ	يَتَعَدُّ	يَتَسَرَّعُ	يُسْتَوْعِدُ	يُسْتَسِرُّ
Part.	مُوْعِدٌ	مُوسِرٌ	مَتَعَدٌّ	مَتَسَرِّعٌ	مُسْتَوْعِدٌ	مُسْتَسِرٌّ

## STEM I—PASSIVE

Perf.	وُعِدَ	يُسِرُّ
Imperf.	يُوْعَدُ	يُوسَرُ
Part.	مُوْعَدٌ	مُسَوَّرٌ

TABLE 8  
DOUBLED VERBS—STEM 1—ACTIVE

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive	Jussive	Imperative
sing.					
3 m.	رَدَّ	يَرُدُّ	يَرُدَّ	يَرُدُّ	
f.	رَدَّتْ	تَرُدُّ	تَرُدَّ	تَرُدُّ	
2 m.	رَدَدْتَ	تَرُدُّ	تَرُدَّ	تَرُدُّ	رُدَّ
f.	رَدَدْتَ	تَرُدُّنَ	تَرُدِّيْ	تَرُدِّيْ	رُدِّيْ
1 c.	رَدَدْتُ	أَرُدُّ	أَرُدَّ	أَرُدُّ	
dual					
3 m.	رَدَّا	يَرُدُّانِ	يَرُدَّا	يَرُدَّا	
f.	رَدَّتَا	تَرُدُّانِ	تَرُدَّا	تَرُدَّا	
2 c.	رَدَدْتُمَا	تَرُدُّانِ	تَرُدَّا	تَرُدَّا	رُدَّا
					أَرُدُّا



TABLE 9  
DOUBLED VERB—DERIVED STEMS

Active	III	IV	VI	VII	VIII	X
Perf.	رَادَدَ-رَادَّ	أَرَدَ	تَرَادَدَ-تَرَادَّ	انَرَدَ	ارْتَدَّ	اسْتَرَدَّ
Imperf.	يُرَادُّ	يُأَرِدُ	يَتَرَادُّ	يُنَرِدُ	يُورِتُّ	يُسْتَرِدُّ
Imp.	رَادِدْ	أَرِدْ أَرِدْ	تَرَادِّ	انَرِدْ	ارْتَدِّ	اسْتَرِدِّ
Part.	مُرَادِّ	مَرِدٌ	مُتَرَادِّ	مُنَرِدٌ	مُورِتٌ	مُسْتَرِدٌّ
Inf.	رَادًّا	أَرْدًا	تَرَادٍّ	انَرْدًا	ارْتِدَاءً	اسْتِرْدَاءً
Passive	رُوِّدَ	أُرِدَّ	تُرَوِّدُ	انُرِدَّ	أُرْتَدَّ	أُسْتَرِدَّ
Perf.	يُرَادُّ	يُأَرِدُ	يَتَرَادُّ	يُنَرِدُ	يُورِتُّ	يُسْتَرِدُّ
Imperf.	يُرَادُّ	يُأَرِدُ	يَتَرَادُّ	يُنَرِدُ	يُورِتُّ	يُسْتَرِدُّ

## STRONG VERB —STEM IX

Part.	Perfect				Imperfect			
	S	D	P	S	D	P		
3 m.	أَحْمَرُ	أَحْمَرَا	أَحْمَرُوا	يَحْمَرُ	يَحْمَرَانِ	يَحْمَرُونَ	مُسْتَرِدٌّ	
f.	أَحْمَرَتْ	أَحْمَرَتَا	أَحْمَرْنَ	تَحْمَرُ	تَحْمَرَانِ	تَحْمَرْنَ	مُرْتَدٌّ	
2 m.	أَحْمَرْتِ	أَحْمَرْتُمَا	أَحْمَرْتُمَا	تَحْمَرِينَ	تَحْمَرَانِ	تَحْمَرْنَ	مُسْتَرِدٌّ	
f.	أَحْمَرْتِ		أَحْمَرْتُمَا	تَحْمَرِينَ				
1 c.	أَحْمَرْتُ		أَحْمَرْنَا	أَحْمَرُ				

STRONG VERB —STEM IX

مَحْمَرٌ  
Participle

أَحْمَرًا  
Infinitive



Active	V	VI	VIII	X
Perf.	تَشَأْ	تَشَأْ	يَتَشَأْ	اسْتَأْ
Impert.	يَتَشَأْ	تَشَأْ	يَتَشَأْ	يَسْتَأْ
Imp.	تَشَأْ	تَشَأْ	يَتَشَأْ	اسْتَأْ
Part.	مَتَشَأْ	مَتَشَأْ	مَوْتَشَأْ	مَسْتَأْ
Inf.	تَشَأْ	تَشَأْ	اِتَشَأْ	اسْتَفَأْ
Passive				
Perf.	تُؤْ	تُؤْ	اُوتْ	اسْتُؤْ
Imperf.	يَتَأْ	تَأْ	يُوتْ	يُسْتَأْ
Part.	مَتَأْ	مَتَأْ	مُوتْ	مُسْتَأْ



TABLE 11  
VERBS MIDDLE HAMZA

Active	I			II	III	V
Perf.	سَالَ	سَرَّ	بَوَسَ	لَامَ	لَاءَمَ	تَلَامَ
Imperf.	يَسَالُ	يَسَارُ	يَبُوسُ	يَلِمُ	يُلَائِمُ	يَتَلَامُ
Imp.	اسْأَلْ	اسْنَأْ	اَبُوسْ	لِئِمْ	لَائِمِمْ	تَلَامِمْ

تَلَوْنَهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ  
تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ    تَلَوْنُهُ

Part.

Inf.

Passive

Perf.

Imperf.

Part.

TABLE 12  
VERBS THIRD HAMZA

Active	I			II	III
	Perf.	2 s. m.	Imperf.	Imp.	Part.
	بَرَأَ	هَنَا	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي
	بَرَأَتْ	هَنَاتُ	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي
	بَرَأَ	يَهْنِي	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي
	بَرَأَ	يَهْنِي	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي
	بَرَأَ	يَهْنِي	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي
	بَرَأَ	يَهْنِي	يَخْطِئُ	يَبْرِي	يُبَارِي

Inf.	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ
Passive	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ
Perf.	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ
Imperf.	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ
Part.	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ	مَبْرَأَةٌ

TABLE 13  
VERBS THIRD W—CHARACTERISTIC A

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect		Energetic		Imperative
sing.			Subjunctive	Jussive			
3 m.	نَدَا	يَنْدُو	يَنْدُوْ	يَنْدُ	يَنْدُوْنَ	يَنْدُوْنَ	
f.	نَدَتْ	تَنْدُوْ	تَنْدُوْ	تَنْدُ	تَنْدُوْنَ	تَنْدُوْنَ	اَنْدِيْ
2 m.	نَدَوْتَ	تَنْدُوْ	تَنْدُوْ	تَنْدُ	تَنْدُوْنَ	تَنْدُوْنَ	اَنْدِيْ
f.	نَدَوْتَ	تَنْدِيْنَ	تَنْدِيْ	تَنْدِيْ	تَنْدِيْنَ	تَنْدِيْنَ	
1 c.	نَدَوْتُ	اَنْدُوْ	اَنْدُوْ	اَنْدُ	اَنْدُوْنَ	اَنْدُوْنَ	
dual							
3 m.	نَدَا	يَنْدُوَانِ	يَنْدُوَاْ	يَنْدُوَاْ	يَنْدُوَانِ	يَنْدُوَانِ	

f.	نَدَا	تَنَدَّوَان	تَنَدَّوَا	تَنَدُّوَان	تَنَدُّوَا
2 c.	نَدَوْنِمَا	تَنَدَّوَان	تَنَدَّوَا	تَنَدُّوَان	تَنَدُّوَا
pl.					
3 m.	نَدَا	يَنَدُّونَ	يَنَدُّوَا	يَنَدُّونَ	يَنَدُّونَ
f.	نَدَوْنَ	يَنَدُّونَ	يَنَدُّونَ	يَنَدُّونَ	يَنَدُّونَ
2 m.	نَدَوْنِهِمْ	تَنَدُّونَ	تَنَدُّوَا	تَنَدُّونَ	تَنَدُّونَ
f.	نَدَوْنِهِنَّ	تَنَدُّونَ	تَنَدُّونَ	تَنَدُّونَ	تَنَدُّونَ
1 c.	نَدَوْنَا	نَدُّوْ	نَدُّوْ	نَدُّوْ	نَدُّوْ

النَّادِي - نَادٍ Active participle      مَنَدُّوْ Passive participle.

TABLE 14  
VERBS THIRD Y—CHARACTERISTIC A

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect		Jussive	Energetic	Imperative
sing.							
3 m.	رَمَى	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِ	يَرْمِينِ	ارْمِ
f.	رَمَتْ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	تَرْمِينِ	ارْمِي
2 m.	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	تَرْمِينِ	ارْمِ
f.	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينِ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِينِ	ارْمِي
1 c.	رَمَيْتُ	ارْمِي	ارْمِي	ارْمِي	ارْمِ	ارْمِينِ	ارْمِ
dual							
3 m.	رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	

f.	رَمَتَا	تَرَمَيَانِ	تَرَمَيَا	تَرَمَيَانِ	اَرَمَيَا
2 c.	رَمَيْتُمَا	تَرَمَيَانِ	تَرَمَيَا	تَرَمَيَانِ	اَرَمَيَانِ
pl.					
3 m.	رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُونَ	اَرْمُوا
f.	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	اَرْمِينَ
2 m.	رَمَيْتُمُ	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمُونَ	اَرْمُوا
f.	رَمَيْتِنِ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	اَرْمِينَ
1 c.	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	اَرْمِي

Active participle رَامٍ - رَامِي.      Passive participle مَرْمُومٌ.



TABLE 15  
VERBS THIRD W OR Y—CHARACTERISTIC I

	Perfect	Indicative	Imperfect	Imperative
			Subjunctive	Jussive
sing.				
3 m.	رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضُ
f.	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضُ
2 m.	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضُ
f.	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضُ
1 c.	رَضَيْتُ	أَرْضَى	أَرْضَى	أَرْضُ
dual				
3 m.	رَضِيَا	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَا

f.	رَضِيََا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	أَرْضِيَا
2 c.	رَضِيْمَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	أَرْضِيْنِ
pl.					
3 m.	رَضُوا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ
f.	رَضِيْنَ	يَرْضِيْنَ	يَرْضِيْنَ	يَرْضِيْنَ	يَرْضِيْنَ
2 m.	رَضِيْتُمَا	تَرْضَوْنِ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْنِ	أَرْضُوا
f.	رَضِيْتِنِ	تَرْضِيْنَ	تَرْضِيْنَ	تَرْضِيْنَ	أَرْضِيْنَ
1 c.	رَضِيْنَا	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى

Active participle رَاضٍ - رَاضِي - رَاضِيْنَ      Passive participle مُرَضًى

The passive is inflected like verbs with characteristic 'i' in the perfect.

TABLE 16  
VERBS THIRD W AND Y—DERIVED STEMS

	II	III	IV	V
Active				
Perf.	قَضَى	قَاضَى	أَقْضَى	تَقَضَى
Imperf.	يَقْضِي	يَقْضِي	يَقْضِي	يَقْضِي
Imp.	قَضِ	قَاضِ	أَقْضِ	تَقْضِ
Part.	مَقْضٍ	مَقَاضٍ	مَقْضٍ	مَقْضٍ
Inf.	تَقْضِيَّةٌ	مَقَاضَاةٌ	إِقْضَايَةٌ	تَقْضٍ
Passive				
Perf.	قُضِيَ	قُوضِيَ	أُقْضِيَ	تُقْضَى
Imperf.	يُقْضَى	يُقَاضَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى
Part. m.	مَقْضٍ	مَقَاضٍ	مَقْضٍ	مَقْضٍ
f.	مَقْضَاةٌ	مَقَاضَاةٌ	مَقْضَاةٌ	مَقْضَاةٌ

	VI	VII	VIII	X
Active				
Perf.	تَقَاَصَى	اِنْقَضَى	اِقْتَضَى	اِسْتَقْضَى
Imperf.	يَتَقَاَصَى	يَنْقُضِي	يَقْضِي	يَسْتَقْضِي
Imp.	تَقَاَضْ	اِنْقُضِ	اِقْضِ	اِسْتَقْضِ
Part.	مَتَقَاَضٍ	مَنْقُضٍ	مَقْضٍ	مَسْتَقْضٍ
Inf.	تَقَاَضَ	اِنْقِضَاءُ	اِقْتِضَاءُ	اِسْتِقْضَاءُ
Passive				
Perf.	تُقَاَصَى	اِنْقُضِيَ	اِقْتُضِيَ	اِسْتَقْضِيَ
Imperf.	يَتَقَاَضَى	يَنْقُضَى	يَقْضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Part. m.	مَتَقَاَضٍ	مَنْقُضٍ	مَقْضٍ	مَسْتَقْضٍ
f.	مَتَقَاَضَةٌ	مَنْقُضَةٌ	مَقْضَةٌ	مَسْتَقْضَةٌ

## KEY

Most English sentences can be translated into Arabic in several ways, all equally right.

## 1

a big river — the gracious king — the house is clean — a beautiful garden — good bread — the poor man — an ugly man — the meat is good — the street is spacious — I am rich — a dirty boy — is he beloved? — an old castle — are you speaking the truth?

## 2

بَيْتٌ صَغِيرٌ - الْبَيْتُ صَغِيرٌ - رَجُلٌ فَقِيرٌ - الْحَيِّبُ  
صَادِقٌ - هُوَ قَبِيحٌ - أَنَا رَجُلٌ - أَنْتَ لَطِيفٌ - الْبُسْتَانُ  
الْوَاسِعُ - نَهْرٌ عَرِيضٌ - الْبَحْرُ حَسَنٌ - الشَّارِعُ  
الْقَبِيحُ - الْوَلَدُ الصَّغِيرُ وَسِيحٌ - الْخُبْزُ طَيِّبٌ.

## 3

a little girl — a big (elder) sister — the town is clean — the mother is beautiful — a new house — the wind is strong — a truthful old woman — the tall chief (old man) — the market is far off — the tree is small — an extensive island — is the girl (daughter) beloved? — oh boy! — oh mighty queen! — a neighbouring land — are you (fem. sing.) rich?

## 4

السَّمْسُ الْحَارَّةُ - الْجَزِيرَةُ بَعِيدَةٌ - أُمٌّ طَوِيلَةٌ -  
الْأُخْتُ الْكَبِيرَةُ - الْعَجُوزُ لَطِيفَةٌ - النَّارُ حَارَّةٌ -

الشَّيْخُ الْعَزِيزُ - الْبَيْتُ جَدِيدٌ (الدَّارُ جَدِيدَةٌ) -  
الْقَصْرُ الْقَدِيمُ - أَهْيَ فَقِيرَةٌ - أَنْتِ لَطِيفَةٌ .

## 5

a door of a house — the door of the garden — the window of the house is open — the land is extensive — the tribe is rich — does the book belong to the daughter of the chief? — no, it belongs to the sister of the merchant — the street of the town is wide — the big courtyard of the house of the king — the key of the door is in the lock — the costume of the chief is clean — the girl's face is beautiful — the safety of man is in the guarding of the tongue — the neighbour before the house and the companion before the road (journey) — power belongs to God — the head (beginning) of wisdom is the fear of God — the caliph is the shadow of God on the earth.

## 6

بُسْتَانُ مَلِكٍ - عِزُّ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي اللِّسَانِ - وَجْهُهُ  
الْبَيْتِ الْحَسَنَةِ الْحَسَنُ - مِفْتَاحُ الْبَابِ ثَقِيلٌ -  
الْبَيْتُ الصَّغِيرُ فِي ظِلِّ شَجَرَةٍ كَبِيرَةٍ - الرَّفِيقُ  
الْحَسَنُ رَأْسُ السَّلَامَةِ عَلَى الطَّرِيقِ - التَّاجِرُ عِزُّ  
الْأَرْضِ - إِنَّ الْكِتَابَ الصَّغِيرَ لَخَفِيفٌ - لِلْبَيْتِ  
كِسَاءٌ خَفِيفٌ وَلِلْعَجُوزِ كِسَاءٌ ثَقِيلٌ .

## 7

is the baker rich?—no, he is poor—the bakers and the carpenters are busy—there are many bakers and carpenters in the town—the two eyes and the two ears are in the head—the two boys (children) are playing—two playing girls—the two hands of the boy are dirty—the old man and the old woman are sitting beside a short and shady tree—two horses and two donkeys—the two sisters of the merchant are in the little room—are you two speaking the truth?—yes, we are speaking the truth—the few sheep belong to the owner of the little house.

## 8

بَابَا الْبَيْتِ مَفْتُوحَانِ - هُوَ صَاحِبُ فَرَسَيْنِ - هِيَ  
صَاحِبَةُ بَيْتٍ وَبُسْتَانٍ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ - الْحِمَارُ فَرَسُ  
الْفَقِيرِ - فِي الْمَدِينَةِ طَبِيبَانِ - لِكُلِّ حُجْرَةٍ فِي  
الْبَيْتِ شُبَّاكَانِ - أَنْتُمْ فَرَّاشُونَ - لَا نَحْنُ  
طَبَّاخُونَ - إِنْ فِي الْبَيْتِ قِطْعَتِي لَحْمٍ وَخُبْزًا كَثِيرًا -  
[قِطْعَتَا لَحْمٍ وَخُبْزٌ كَثِيرٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ] - الْبُسْتَانُ  
لِصَاحِبِي الْمَلِكِ - هُنَّ خِيَّاطَاتٌ مَشْغُولَةٌ  
[مَشْغُولَاتٌ].

## 9

relatives are scorpions—the learned are the heirs of the prophets—the carpenter has partners—the cook has

the eatables in the kitchen — the windows of the great house are many — there are many schools in the town — has the watchman the keys of the town? — no, the governor has them — the old men and the old women are sitting in the shade of the trees — an Arab tribe has many dogs — the vices of the elect are the virtues of the mob — the loaves are from the shops of the bakers — the nobles are the associates of the governors in guarding the towns — the shops of the greengrocers are in a special market.

## 10

الْفَلَاحُونَ وَالشُّجَّارُ أَعْمِدَةُ الْأَرْضِ - أَصَابِعُ الْوَلَدِ  
وَسِخَّةٌ - الْعَبِيدُ عِبَادٌ - الْحِنْطَةُ طَعَامُ الْأَشْرَافِ  
وَالشَّعِيرُ طَعَامُ الْفُقَرَاءِ - أَصْحَابُ الْكِسَاءِ الْحَسَنِ  
فِي بُيُوتِ الْمُلُوكِ - فَوَاكِهُ الشَّامِ طَيِّبَةٌ - أَوْلَادُ  
الْأَشْرَافِ فِي مَدَارِسَ خَاصَّةٍ - إِنَّ أَظْفَارَ الْبِنْتِ  
نَظِيفَةٌ وَأَظْفَارُ الْوَلَدِ وَسِخَةٌ - الْكِلابُ حُرَّاسُ  
الْعَرَبِ - إِنَّ الرِّيَّاحَ عَلَى الْجَزَائِرِ بَارِدَةٌ - قُلُوبُ  
النَّاسِ بَيْنَ أَصَابِعِ اللَّهِ .

## 11

my hand is clean — your two hands are clean — his fine horses are swift — Zayd, his daughter is beautiful — his cattle have much milk — my weight (worth) in his opinion



is as the weight of a dog — the strength of a man is in his intelligence and his tongue — the poets and knights of the Arabs are many — he has two boys, the elder of the two is short and the younger of the two is tall — the honour of a man is his sons and his care his house and his neighbour — your graceful poems are known among men, all of them — my poor friend has two donkeys and your woman friend has many horses — your big box is light and her little box is heavy.

## 12

حِنْطَتِي وَشَعِيرِي فِي صَنَادِيقِي الْكَبِيرَةِ - إِنْ  
يَدَيْهَا لَنَظِيفَتَانِ - وَطَنَّا حَبِيبُ الْإِنْسَانِ - يَا أَوْلَادُ  
أَعِنْدَكُمْ كُتُبُكُمْ - رَسَائِلُكَ اللَّطِيفَةُ فِي حَفْظِ  
صَاحِبِي [رَسَائِلُكُمْ اللَّطِيفَةُ] - يَدَايَ وَرِجْلَايَ -  
أَخْتُكَ وَخَادِمَاتُهَا جَالِسَةٌ عِنْدَ طَبَّاخِي - شَيْوَهُمْ  
أَصْحَابُ الْحِكْمَةِ - يَدَا الْعَجُوزِ وَعَيْنَاهَا ضَعِيفَتَانِ -  
وَزْنُ الْإِنْسَانِ وَزْنُ عَقْلِهِ - حِكْمَةُ الشَّيْخِ مِنْ كَثَرَةِ  
تَجَارِبِهِ .

## 13

the old man hit the boy's head — the old woman understood the girl's words — did you seek food from the kitchen? — I fetched meat from the butcher's shop — the boys came out from the mosque and went into the

school — the sempstresses went away from our town and returned to their native land — girls, have you drunk water? — no, we drank milk — did you two hear the voices (song) of the birds on the trees? — I cut the meat into small pieces — my mother sent me to you — the men came down from the top of the mountain and captured the town.

## 14

أَكْتَبْتَ الرِّسَالِ - هَلْ كَتَبْتُمُ الرِّسَالِ - كَسَرَ  
 الْوَلَدُ قَدَمَ الْكَلْبِ بِحَجَرَةٍ - سَمِعُوا كَلَامَ الْأَمِيرِ  
 وَرَجَعُوا إِلَى يُوْتِهِمْ - دَخَلَ الْمُلُوكُ الْأَرْضَ وَفَتَحُوهَا -  
 فَتَحْتُ الشُّبَّاكَ وَدَخَلَ كَلْبٌ - صَرَخَ حُرَّاسُ الْبَقْرِ  
 هَلْ سَمِعْتُمُوهُمْ - قَطَعَ الْأَطِبَّاءُ يَدَ الرَّجُلِ وَرِجْلَهُ -  
 أَدَخَلْتُمُ الْحُجْرَةَ - يَا بَنَاتُ هَلْ لَعِبْتُنَّ مَعَ الْكَلْبِ  
 الْكَبِيرِ - قَطَعَ رِجَالُ قَبِيحَةٍ آذَانَ الْبَقْرِ - يَا بَنَاتِ  
 أَبْعَثْنَا تُحْفَةً إِلَى أُخْتِكُمَا.

## 15

the boys went into the sea to swim — the carpenter sent to me to ask for wood — we sat by the spring drinking and laughing — the commander of the army came out, went up the mountain and looked at the ranks of the enemy — the companions went from Syria to Jerusalem stopping every night in a village — men in summer go away from the hot towns and put up in towns near the sea

— the merchant progressed to the king's city collecting the dinars from his clients — you will hear the sound of the drums.

## 16

سَيَفْتَحُ اللَّهُ الْمَدِينَةَ عَلَى يَدِ نَبِيِّهِ - خَرَجَ الْكِلَابُ  
يَنْبَحُونَ [تَنْبَحُ] - يَلْبَسُ النَّاسُ [الْإِنْسَانُ] ثِيَابًا  
ثَقِيلَةً فِي الشِّتَاءِ - جَلَسْتُمْ تَسْمَعُونَ كَلَامَ الشَّاعِرِ -  
أَتَصْنَعُ الْبَنَاتُ ثِيَابَهُنَّ [ثِيَابَهَا] - يَضْرِبُ الْمَلِكُ  
دَنَائِرَ طَبِيعَةٍ - خَرَجَ الْأَوْلَادُ يَلْعَبُونَ - قَدِمَ الْجَيْشُ  
يَضْرِبُونَ طُبُولَهُمْ - صَنَعَ لَنَا النِّجَارُ كُؤُوسًا مِنْ  
خَشَبٍ نَشْرَبُ مِنْهَا - سَمِعْنَا الْحُرَّاسَ يَصْرُخُونَ عَلَى  
الْعَدُوِّ - نَظَرْتُ إِلَيْهِ وَهُوَ يَغْضَبُ عَلَى كَلَامِي.

## 17

these two men are the two chiefs of the tribe — this is the truthful slave girl — this estate of mine is renowned in the country — these girls are playing in the court of the school — those men have camped at the entry of the town — I heard that dog of yours barking — this is your bed — whose are these jewels? — they belong to the agent of the owner of this estate — those are slave girls from the household of the chief — who made those cups and dishes of yours? — whom did you send to me? — from whose statement is this?

الْأَشْعَارُ الْقَصِيرَةُ هِيَ الْمَشْهُورَةُ - أَغْضَبُ [أَنَا]  
 عَلَى مَا فَعَلْتَ - لِذَلِكَ أَلَوْ كَيْلِ فِضَّةٍ كَثِيرَةٍ وَذَهَبُ  
 كَثِيرٌ - لِمَنْ تِلْكَ الضَّيْعَةُ - صَعِدَ الْحَارِسُ فِي مَنَارَةِ  
 الْمَسْجِدِ ذَلِكَ يَصْرُخُ - سَيَكْتُبُ الْأَوْلَادُ عَلَى  
 تِلْكَ الْأَوْرَاقِ بِهَذِهِ الْأَقْلَامِ - ذَهَبَ صَاحِبُكَ  
 الْفَقِيرُ ذَلِكَ يَطْلُبُ الْقُوَّةَ - جَمَعَ وَكَيْلُكَ هَذَا مَالًا  
 كَثِيرًا - أَوْرَاقُ الشَّجَرِ هَذِهِ قُوَّةٌ لِلْغَنَمِ - الْمَخْرَجُ  
 مِنْ جَهْلِهِ عَسِيرٌ عَلَى الْجَاهِلِ - مَالِي هُوَ سَيَفِي  
 وَكُتِبِي.

that dog of yours is white — this horse is black — the black slave is in the red room — this tree is green in summer — the two eyes of the girl are blue — the Path is sharper than a sword and thinner than a hair — the colour of this flower, what is it? — it has two colours, blue and yellow — the leaves of the trees are brown and red in autumn — gold is heavier than silver — prayer is better than sleep — best of gifts is understanding and the worst of calamities ignorance — a dumb slave girl is the best — my daughter is taller than I.

لَهُ إِمَاءٌ طُرُشٌ وَسُودٌ - جَيْشُنَا أَقَلُّ مِنْ جَيْشِ  
 أَعْدَائِنَا - الْغَنَمُ فِي بِلَادِ الْعَرَبِ سُودٌ [سَوْدَاءٌ] -  
 الْقُوتُ الْأَحَبُّ إِلَى الْعَرَبِ الْأَسْوَدَانِ اللَّحْمُ وَالتَّمْرُ -  
 النَّخْلُ أَطْوَلُ مِنَ الزَّيْتُونِ - ضَيْعَتُكَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ ضَيْعَتِي -  
 إِنَّ لِهَذَا الطَّائِرِ صَدْرًا أَصْفَرَ وَجَنَاحَيْنِ أَحْمَرَيْنِ -  
 بَعَثَ إِلَى أَصْدِقَائِي مَوَاهِبَ كَثِيرَةً وَمَوْهَبَتِكَ هِيَ  
 الْحُسْنَى - بَعَثَ اللَّهُ نَبِيَّهُ لِكُلِّ النَّاسِ السُّودَ  
 وَالْبَيْضَ وَالْحُمْرَ - إِنَّ أُخْتِكَ الصَّغْرَى هِيَ الْطُفْهَنُ.

my father and your brother heard the noises of the riding  
 beasts — the daughter looked for her father in the market  
 — the old man gathered his sons round his bed before his  
 death — the greengrocer's daughter took the white papers  
 away from her brother's hand — the woman with her sons  
 went into the presence (between the hands) of the caliph  
 — boys, do you know the names of the flowers? — yes,  
 we know the name of every flower in the garden — I  
 followed your brother in the road writing his name on the  
 wall of every house — your parents rejoice at your success  
 — a man is in the two smallest (parts) of him, his heart and  
 his tongue — the beauty of a man lies in his tongue and  
 the beauty of a woman in her understanding.

أَفْهَمْتُمَا أَنْتَ وَأَخُوكَ كَلَامِي - يَلْعَبُ أَخَوَايَ  
وَأُخْتَايَ مَعَ إِخْوَانِكَ وَأَخَوَاتِكَ - أَبْعَثْ أَبُوكَ أَخَاكَ  
إِلَيَّ - بَعَثَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ أَبْنَاءَهَا يَطْلُبُونَ الْمَالَ فِي  
بُلْدَانٍ بَعِيدَةٍ - مَا أَسْمُكَ - اِسْمِي مَشْهُورٌ هُوَ  
أَشْهُرُ أَسْمَاءِ الْعَرَبِ - يَا امْرَأَةُ الْكَ اُولَادٌ - نَعَمْ  
إِنَّ لِي أَبْنَاءً وَأَبْنَاتَيْنِ - لِهَذَا الرَّجُلِ أَبَوَانِ أَبُو  
جِسْمِهِ وَأَبُو عَقْلِهِ - هَلْ نَزَلْتَ عِنْدَ أَبِي صَدِيقِي -  
ذَوُو الْعِلْمِ وَالْمَالِ هُمْ أَقَلُّ النَّاسِ .

women, listen to the noise of your infants — the going into this business is easier than the coming out from it — maid, go to the market and ask for my new clothes from the dressmaker — the hider of a secret is a faithful friend — self conquest is the greatest conquest — general, dismount from your horse and enter my house ; this will be a great honour to me — what is required from you is to return from the far country to the house of your parents — he who is served, in your opinion, is the servant of you all — we belong to God and to him we return — a man's serving his brother is honour.

يَا ابْنَتِي أَسْمَعِي قَوْلِي - أَطْلُبِ الْعِلْمَ مِنَ الْكُلِّ  
الرِّجَالِ وَالنِّسَاءِ - دُخُولُ الْمَالِ عَسِيرٌ وَالْخُرُوجُ  
مِنْهُ يَسِيرٌ - مَعْرِفَةُ نَفْسِكَ الْمَعْرِفَةُ الْكُبْرَى  
وَالْعُسْرَى - فَرَحَ الْمَلِكِ بِرُجُوعِ جَيْشِهِ بَعْدَ فَتْحِهِ  
أَعْدَاءَهُ - قَطْعُ الْيَدِ عَذَابُ السَّارِقِ - يَفْرَحُ الْكَرِيمُ  
بِقُدُومِ الْأَضْيَافِ - حَفْظُكَ اللِّسَانَ مِنَ الْقَبِيحِ  
مَخَافَةُ اللَّهِ - مَطْلُوبُ بَعْثِي هَذَا الْغُلَامَ إِلَيْكَ دُخُولُهُ  
فِي خِدْمَتِكَ .

he who hurries repents — the government sent its servants to measure the fields — the doctor wanted me to drink much milk — had you been at the war, you would know which of the two armies was the braver — let him take its prey from the mouth of the lion that we may know his strength and courage — I do not like that you should look on the faults of your neighbours — the caliph wrote to the commander of his army ; do not kill old men and infants and do not cut down trees — if you get out of this affair, you will be glad all your life — it is part of courage to put up with calamities and the unpleasant — the father called for two doctors to find out his son's illness.

لَا تَلْعَبْ بِذَلِكَ السِّيفِ الْحَدِيدِ - لَا كَشِفْنَ عَنْ  
 سِرِّهِ - لَيْسَ كُتِ الْغُلَامُ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ أَكْبَرَ مِنْهُ -  
 لَا دَخُلْ دَارَكَ لَا نَظَرُ إِلَى فُرْشِكَ - كَسَرُوا الْكَأْسَ  
 لَيْسَقُطَ السَّمُّ فِيهَا عَلَى الْأَرْضِ - إِبْعَثِ الْغُلَامَ  
 لِيَجْمَعَ الثَّمَرُ السَّاقِطَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ - تَخْرُجُ نِسَاءُ  
 الْقَبِيلَةِ كُلِّ يَوْمٍ لِيَجْمَعْنَ حَطَبًا [لِيَجْمَعَ الْحَطَبُ] -  
 لَا تَغْضَبْ عَلَى الصَّدِيقِ - مِنْ الشَّرَفِ أَنْ تَكْرَهُ  
 عُيُوبَ نَفْسِكَ .

do not beat your children — my father did not send me to look for a book for you (a book of yours) — he will never be noble who does not hide secrets — we have never heard the like of this story — God is one, nothing is like him — we do not return from our work in the fields while the sun is in the sky — we were not glad at this news and not sorry — there is no poverty and no trial like greed graspingness and no wealth like contentment — there is no intelligence like good management, no piety like self control and no beauty like the beauty of character — running away in the time for it is better than holding on when it is not the time for it — two are not satisfied, the seeker after knowledge and the seeker after wealth.



إِنَّ أَعْدَاءَنَا لَا رَحِمَهُمُ اللَّهُ كَثِيرَةٌ - لَا تَفْزَعُ مِنَ  
 الشُّغْلِ - لَمْ يَشْبِعِ النَّبِيُّ لَحْمًا فِي حَيَاتِهِ - لَا تَقْنَعُ  
 بِقَلِيلٍ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ - لَنْ يَرْجِعَ الْأَيَّامُ الذَّاهِبَةُ - مَا  
 أَطْلُبُ تَحَفًّا مِنَ الْحُكُومَةِ الْيَوْمَ - لَا تَفْزَعُ إِلَى  
 غَيْرِ اللَّهِ - يَا بَشَى لَا تَضْحَكِي عَلَى مُصِيبَةِ الْفَقِيرِ  
 وَلَا تَغْضَبِي عَلَى نَجَاحِ ذِي مَالٍ - هُوَ ذُو مَالٍ  
 وَضِيَاعٍ وَيُوتٍ وَلَا يَقْنَعُ - لَسْتَ ذَا حِكْمَةٍ [بِذِي  
 حِكْمَةٍ].

it is yellow in colour (he is fair of complexion) — Zayd is  
 stupid but Umar is more stupid than he — the wind to-day  
 is stronger than it was yesterday — he fled from the  
 country for fear of the wrath of the sultan — he went right  
 and left looking for food — they waited for no long time —  
 I stayed away from the war out of cowardice — the peasants  
 planted their fields with barley — I am more afraid of him  
 than he of me — I aimed at (entering) the service of some  
 great man for the sake of getting rich — I was glad but  
 hid my feelings in sorrow for the sick man — I bowed down  
 to God for joy at his sending the prophet.

فَزِعَتْ فَزَعًا عَظِيمًا - لَمْ يَهْرُبْ أَحَدٌ هَرَبِي -  
 سَكَنْتُ فِي تِلْكَ الْمَدِينَةِ سِنِينَ كَثِيرَةً - إِنَّ لَهُ  
 مَالًا قَلِيلًا وَيَقْنَعُ بِفَقْرِهِ [هُوَ ذُو مَالٍ قَلِيلٍ] - الْحَرُّ  
 الْيَوْمَ أَشَدُّ مِنْهُ الْبَارِحَ - شَجَاعَتُهُ شَجَاعَةُ الْأَسَدِ -  
 إِنَّهُ أَشْجَعُ مِنَ الْأَسَدِ - سَكَتَ طَوِيلًا - لَا أَذْهَبُ  
 إِلَى الْبُلْدَانِ الْحَارَّةِ خَوْفًا مِنَ الْمَرَضِ - لَبَسَ ثِيَابَ  
 الْحَرِيرِ فَرَحًا فِي جَمْعِهِ مَالًا كَثِيرًا - هُوَ قَوِيٌّ  
 ذِرَاعًا وَضَعِيفٌ قَدَمًا.

whose argument is short, his tongue is long (much verbiage instead of a good case) — stand up, my boy, and go to your grandfather — the children were playing in the street — the girl feared the violence of the wind — the caravan came back through fear of brigands — my daughter, be not afraid; you will not go alone — let him say what he thinks — I was the son of my father then I became the father of my son — the colour of the snake is dark (a darkness) inclining to blackness — the bedouin were selling the skins of sheep and goats to the peasants — the army will have overcome its enemies before sunset.

قَامَ مِنْ فِرَاشِهِ وَالشَّمْسُ قَدْ مَالَتْ لِعُرُوبِهَا - إِنْ  
 مَاتَ شَيْخٌ مِنْ قَوْمِنَا قَامَ شَيْخٌ [يَمُتُ . . . يَقُمْ] -  
 يَكُونُ الْقَافِلَةُ سَارَتْ أَيَّامًا كَثِيرَةً - قَدْ سَمِعَ  
 الْجَمَاعَةُ كُلُّهَا مَا أَقُولُ - يَقِيلُ كُلُّ النَّاسِ فِي  
 أَيَّامِ الصَّيْفِ الْحَارَّةِ - يَقُولُ كَثِيرٌ غَيْرٌ مَا فِي  
 قَلْبِهِ - لَا تَخَفْ مَكَارِيهَ الطَّرِيقِ - قَدْ كَانَتْ  
 الْمَرْأَةُ تَصْنَعُ ثِيَابًا لِأَوْلَادِهَا - لَا يَكُونُ الْأَضْيَافُ  
 قَامُوا مِنْ فُرُشِهِمْ قَبْلَ ذَهَابِكَ - يَا جَدَّتِي هَلْ  
 تَسِيرِينَ مَعَ النِّسَاءِ الْآخِرِ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ .

I spoke to him and did not speak to any other — the rich man fed many poor men so they went away grateful — boys, do not oppose your parents — we were following the peasant and got separated from our fellows — wait for me in the market and do not go away — the inhabitants of the town were perturbed on the arrival of the news of the defeat of the army — all you approve in a dog, demand it in a horse — the woman were crowding round the gate of the palace to receive the queen's gifts — the brigands overpowered the town and destroyed all that was in it — I asked my farm labourers to store up the

snow in chambers under ground — I do not wish you to compare my boasts with my acts — the leader surrendered the fortress to the besiegers.

## 34

اسْتَغْفَرْتُ اللَّهَ فَيَغْفِرْ لِي - أَنْظِرْنِي إِلَى قُدُومِ  
الْأَضْيَافِ لِأَسْمَعَ أَخْبَارَهُمْ - سَأَنْتَظِرُكَ بَعْدَ غُرُوبِ  
الشَّمْسِ - قَدْ يَنْزِعُ الْإِخْوَانُ أَخَوَاتِهِمْ - سَأُعَذِّبُ  
الْلُّصُوصَ وَكُلَّ فَاعِلٍ الشَّرِّ - غَالَبَنِي وَغَلَبْتُهُ - لَا  
يَسْتَقْبِحُ وَلَدٌ أُمَّهُ - اخْتَلَفَ الْجَمَاعَةُ فِي مَا يَفْعَلُونَ -  
اسْتَخْلَفَ الْأَمِيرُ ابْنَهُ فِي غُيُوبِهِ - يُلْبِسُ كُلُّ  
النَّاسِ أَوْلَادَهُمْ ثِيَابًا جَدِيدَةً عَلَى الْعِيدَيْنِ  
الْكَبِيرَيْنِ - أَبُوكَ أَقَدْ يَدْخُلُ فَقِيرًا الْبَيْتَ وَيُطْعِمُهُ.

## 35

that coin was struck in Stamboul — a man is known by his companions — it was gone two miles (two miles were traversed) — if you are killed, being killed is the noblest mode of death — I was burdened with the care of my younger brothers after our father's death — he was doubted about his pedigree, attacked for it (the genuineness of his descent was suspected and attacked) — he, who has been forbidden kindness, has been forbidden all good — this is a matter wherein there is difference (of

opinion) — Ramadan was fasted (the fast of Ramadan was kept) — the caliph died and the youngest son of his uncle succeeded — entry is forbidden — he was carried on government horses to Egypt — have you learnt engineering? yes, the teacher taught it to us — the fields were sown with flowers.

## 36

يُنْشَدُ شِعْرُهُ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ كِبَارِ الْبِلَادِ - زُرِعَ الْمَزَارِعُ  
حِنْطَةً وَشَعِيرًا وَذُرَّةً - دُخُولُ الْمَسَاجِدِ مَمْنُوعٌ -  
قُتِلَ الرَّئِيسُ وَأَنْهَزَمَ الْجَيْشُ - صُنِعَتِ الْأَرْضُ فِرَاشًا  
لَكُمْ - صُرِفَ وَجْهُهُ عَنْ قَصْدِهِ - فَخَرَهُ مَشْكُوكٌ  
فِيهِ - قُتِلَ أَبُوهُ قَتَلَهُ رَجُلٌ مِنْ مِصْرَ - يَقْدَمُ قُدُومَ  
الْجَمَلِ الْمَحْمُولِ عَلَيْهِ - لَيْمَ (كَانَ يُلَامُ) عَلَى صَوْمِهِ  
الْكَثِيرِ - سَيُكْشَفُ عَنْ سِرِّهِ .

## 37

do you want to go away? — let a writer not be unwilling to write — get down out of paradise for it is not for you to act proudly in it — we did not busy ourselves with mentioning that, that the book might not be too long — I do not believe that anyone is superior to Zayd in learning and manners — the beautiful forgiveness is that you do not blame him whom you pardon — your blood is tabu to you (murder is an unholy act) till you stand before your lord — someone asked a woman in marriage and she said, No,

until you divorce your wife — I do not fear for you that you should be afraid ; I only fear for you that you should not be afraid — the child is so heavy that its mother cannot carry it — a bedouin heard a man say : I testify that Muhammad the apostle of God ; so he said, does what ?

## 38

طَالَ خُطْبَتُهُ حَتَّى يَنَامَ السَّامِعُونَ - نَعْتَقِدُ أَنَّ اللَّهَ  
أَحَدٌ وَأَنْ يَغْفِرَ لِلنَّادِمِينَ - كَرِهَ الزَّوْجُ أَنْ يُطْلَقَ  
زَوْجَتَهُ الْعَجُوزَ رَحْمَةً عَلَيْهَا - اسْتَمَعْتُ كُلَّ السَّمْعِ  
خَوْفًا أَنْ يَسْقُطَ عَنِّي شَيْءٌ مِمَّا يَقُولُ - مَا مَنَعَكَ  
أَنْ تَسْجُدَ [مَا مَنَعَكَ مِنَ السُّجُودِ] - يَبْعَثُ غُلَمَانَهُ  
لِيُنْزِلُوا الثَّلْجَ مِنَ الْجِبَالِ لِحَفَظِ طَعَامِهِ فِي الْأَيَّامِ  
الْحَارَةِ - نَخَافُ أَنْ يُنَازِعَ الْجَمَاعَتَانِ بَعْضُهُمَا  
بَعْضًا - أَخْبَرَهُ أَنِّي صَنَعْتُ هَذَا الصَّوْتَ لَهُ .

## 39

he will soon come back from his journey — the sick man scarcely moves on his bed — you always benefited me by your advice and example — if he talked to us, he talked well ; if we talked to him, he listened attentively — can a man like this compose poetry or make good poetry — a number of nights befell us when we did not sleep from the cold and almost died — the shop-keeper was in the morning

and people crowding in front of his shop (the shop-keeper woke to find, etc.) — learn knowledge for if you are unimportant in one people perhaps you may become important in another — if he marries you to her, perhaps you may be granted a child like me — I am almost afraid of the noise of the wind.

## 40

كِدْتُ أَعْتَقِدُ مَا يَقُولُ - هَرَبُوا هَرَبًا سَرِيعًا -  
 أَسْرَعُوا الْهَرَبَ - لَمْ يَلْبَثْ أَنْ يَدْخُلَ - عَسَى أَنْ  
 يَرْجِعُوا غَدًا - لَعَلَّهُمْ يَرْجِعُونَ غَدًا - لَمْ تَكْذُ تَلُومُ  
 ابْنَهَا عَلَى أَنْ يَسْبَحَ فِي النَّهْرِ الْكَبِيرِ وَهُوَ لَا  
 يُحْسِنُ السَّبَّاحَةَ - يُوشِكُ الْمُتَكَبِّرُونَ أَنْ يَنْدَمُوا  
 عَلَى تَكَبُّرِهِمْ - إِنَّ ذَلِكَ الْغَلَامَ كَادَ يَعْكِسُ  
 الدُّنْيَا - هَزَمُونَا مَرَّةً وَلَا يَعُودُونَ يَهْزِمُونَنَا - حَرَّكَ  
 رَجُلَانِ ذَوَا قُوَّةٍ عَظِيمَةِ الْحَجَرِ وَلَمْ يَكْذُ يَتَحَرَّكُ -  
 لَا تَعُدْ تَفْعَلْ هَذَا [تَفْعَلْ] .

## 41

God is one ; he does not beget and is not begotten — he is a man, his description cannot be described (supremely

ordinary) — he did not let his younger son inherit with the elder — leave excuses alone for most of them are sins (lies) — God's knowledge embraces the acts and thoughts of his servants (of men) — justice is that you should put things in their places — who is the worst of men as to position ? he said : he whose knowledge is wide, his power narrow, and his ambition far-reaching — they suspected him of unbelief for his studying the books of the philosophers — it is necessary for the learner that he should seek the truth — I expected the arrival of the news and it has not yet come — the two doctors will soon agree on the treatment of the invalid.

## 42

صِفْ أَحْوَالَ مَرَضِكَ (صِفْ أَحْوَالَ دَاءِكَ) - كَانَ  
 أَخْبَارُ جَدِيدَةٍ تَصِلُ كُلَّ سَاعَةٍ - ضَاقَتْ عَلَيْهِ  
 الْأَرْضُ وَقَدْ كَانَتْ وَسِعَتْ - وَجْهَتُهُ إِلَيْكَ وَلَمْ يَتَوَجَّهْ -  
 سَمِعْنَاكُمْ تَصِفُونَ مَا فَعَلْتُمْ - سَنَجِدُهُمْ يَقِفُونَ فِي  
 الشَّارِعِ - لَا يُوْجَدُ كُفْرَانٌ [لَا كُفْرَانٌ] كَكُفْرَانِ  
 الْوَلَدِ الْكَافِرِ - سَمِعْتُ أَصْدِقَاءَهُ يُودِّعُونَهُ - أَوْجَبَ  
 عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَكِلَ هَذَا الْأَمْرَ لِغَيْرِكَ - ضَعَّ يَدَكَ عَلَى  
 كِتَابِ اللَّهِ وَأَخْلَفَ .



he had cousins who inherited from him — you are not those who run away from the truth (duty) — what a man sows to-day he will reap to-morrow — I got down from the couch on which I had been thrown — that was the seal (last) of his good deeds which surpass description — how are you not pleased with a plan which will combine for you health of body, acuteness of mind, and much wealth? — the two girls, whom I sent to the girls' school, have turned out learned and cultured — be to them as a doctor who does not hurry with a remedy before knowing the disease — did you sell the two slaves with whom you were displeased? — describe to me (the man) who spoke to you.

وَكَلْتُ أَحَدًا أَتَكِلُ عَلَيْهِ - يَزْعُمُ أَنَّ مَا نَزَلَ بِهِ  
لَمْ يَنْزِلْ عَلَى غَيْرِهِ - مَنْ لَا يَعْرِفُ الدَّاءَ لَا يَعْرِفُ  
الدَّوَاءَ - لَا يُرِيدُونَ أَنْ يَسْمَعُوا الْكِتَابَيْنِ الَّذِينَ  
وَرِثُوهُمَا مِنْ عَمَّهُمْ - زَرَعْنَا الْمَزَارِعَ الَّتِي وَجَدْنَاهَا غَيْرَ  
مَزْرُوعَةٍ - هَذَانِ هُمَا الْإِثْنَانِ الَّذِينَ وَجَدَا الْمَجْرُوحَ  
وَحَمَلَاهُ إِلَى مَنْزِلِي - خَرَجْتُ مِنَ الْبَابِ الَّذِي  
دَخَلْتُ فِيهِ - إِنَّ الْحَقُّوقَ الَّتِي وَجَبَتْ عَلَيَّ جَاوَزَتْ  
قُوَّتِي - وَدَعْتُ الشُّغْلَ الَّذِي أَرُغِبُ فِيهِ وَتَوَجَّهْتُ  
إِلَى شُغْلٍ أَرُغِبُ عَنْهُ.

## 45

I love her, she loves me, and my camel loves her she-camel — I thought that he was preparing to climb mountains — do not think that I oppose you — he who is moderate, the meeting with him is light on his friend ; the man of (many) requests, his face is loathed — a different story is told about Musaab and his brother's dismissing him from Basra and sending him back to it — the quickest to (take part in) civil strife are the least of them as to shame at running away — I perceived the noise of the passing of a snake ; did you not perceive it ? — stretch out your hand to the rope of God and he will help you — count the sick and get ready the medicines for treating them — he passed by the boys telling them the stories of the prophet.

## 46

دُلِّنِي لِمَا يَسْرُنِي - ظَنَنْتُ أَنَّكَ تَدُلُّنِي وَأَضَلَلْتَنِي -  
 كَانَ الْوَلَدُ يَسْتَمِدُّ الْمُعَلِّمَ وَيُمِدُّهُ - تُحِبُّ أَنْ تَصِيرَ  
 شَيْخَ الْقَوْمِ فَاسْتَخِفَّ مَا يَقُولُ النَّاسُ - ظَنَنَّا  
 النِّسَاءَ يَفْرِزْنَ خَوْفًا وَهُنَّ يُسْرِعْنَ لِلِقَاءَ أَزْوَاجِهِنَّ -  
 لَا نَعْرِفُ مَا نَظُنُّ - ضَلَّ الْكَافِرُونَ وَيُضِلُّونَ  
 غَيْرَهُمْ - سَلَّمْتُ عَلَى الْجَمَاعَةِ وَرَدُّوا سَلَامِي -  
 أَتَظُنُّهُمْ سَيُقِرُّونَ بِحُقُوقِي - لَا رَادَّ لِمَا يَفْعَلُ اللَّهُ .

the noble's promise is cash down, the ignoble's is postponement — we went hunting and made a bag — my sister did not wish to obey the orders of her teacher — why do you not wish to leave your work? — bats hide in the daytime for fear lest they should be hunted for their beauty — my father wanted to buy what his family needed — some one heard a man asking God's help for his mother. He said to him, What about your father? He said, He is a man and can fend for himself — Did your father give you any choice in your marriage? — No, my mother chose a wife for me — we heard a Jew threatening his servant — you must answer (obey) the call of the government — greed led those women to incline from the path of kindness and they let themselves be led.

سَكَتَ وَأَطَالَ الشُّكُوتَ - يُمِيلُ الْبُخْلُ النَّاسَ  
عَنِ الصِّرَاطِ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ - اسْتَعْنَاهُ وَأَعَانَا - أَقَامَ  
حَجْرًا كَبِيرًا ذِكْرًا لِمَا أَصَابَ الْقَوْمَ مِنَ الشَّرِّ -  
أَخَافَ اللَّصُوصُ سُكَّانَ الْبُيُوتِ الْبَعِيدَةِ - يُمِيتُنِي  
عَنَايَةُ أَهْلِي وَبَيْتِي - يَفْعَلُ ذَلِكَ الْيَهُودِيُّ مَا يُرِيدُ  
وَيُضَوِّبُهُ الْيَهُودُ وَالنَّصَارَى - يَتَعَلَّمُ الْحَكِيمُ مِمَّا  
يُضِيبُ غَيْرَهُ مِنَ الشَّرِّ - اِحْتَاجَتْ إِلَى الْعَوْنِ وَلَمْ  
تَجِدْ مُعِينًا - اِحْتَلْتُ كُلَّ الْأَحْتِيَالِ لِأَخْرَجَ مِنْ

الْحِصْنِ الَّذِي أَنَا أُسِيرٌ فِيهِ وَلَمْ أَجِدْ مَخْرَجًا -  
إِبْتَاعَتِ امْرَأَتِي ثِيَابًا مِنْ الْحَرِيرِ وَالصُّوفِ .

## 49

who trains his child when young will find pleasure in him when grown up — I believe in God, in his angels, in his apostles, in his books, and in the last day — does the commander allow me to question the prisoners ? — I rented my house from a merchant and paid him the rent for it every month — they began the festival with the reading of the noble Koran ; then one of the women preached telling the story of the apostle — the old man was friendly with the beggars and refugees — he earned a great reward by composing a book in defence of the religion of the Christians — people congratulated him on his return safe from the war — greet him (from me) and inform him that I will meet him to-morrow — I am not the man to prefer anyone with my share from you (I will not give up to any what you have given me) — is anyone safe from misfortune ?

## 50

أَكِلَ هَذَا السَّائِلَ وَأَمْرُهُ بِالذَّهَابِ - لَمْ يَأْمَنْ مَا  
يَحْتَالُ الْحَاسِدُ - اسْتَأْجَرْتُ رَجُلًا يَخْصُدُونَ  
مَزَارِعَكَ [هَلِ اسْتَأْجَرْتُ رَجُلًا أَنْ يَخْصُدُوا] - آنَسْتُ  
هَذَا الْقَوْمَ فَيُكَافُونَنِي مُكَافَأَةً عَظِيمَةً -

سَيُؤَاكِلُنِي أَصْدِقَاكَ وَيُشَارِبُونَنِي - سَأُوكِلُهُ  
 خُبْزًا وَتَمْرًا - ثُمَّ يَسْتَأْذِنُ الشُّعْرَاءُ الْأَمِيرَ أَنْ يَبْدِئُوا  
 إِنْشَادَ أَشْعَارِهِمْ - أَثَرُ الشَّمْسِ فِي وَجْهِ الْفَلَّاحِ  
 وَلَمْ يَتَأَثَّرْ قُوَّةُ جِسْمِهِ - تَأَخَّرَتِ الْقَافِلَةُ آخِرَهَا  
 الْمَطَرُ.

## 51

when you do a man a good turn, forget it — there is no good in kindness when it is counted — a man hid what (kindness) he did and published what was done to him — the Arabs say, a turbaned chief, meaning that every crime one of his tribe commits is bound on his head (he takes the responsibility for it) — why do you not make lampoons long? he said, what goes round the neck is enough of a necklace for you — what I like does not come to me, and what comes to me I do not like — make me independent by my need of you and do not make me poor by my being able to do without you — what is little and sufficient is better than what is much and distracts — why do you not go to war? he said, I hate cordially death in my bed, how can I go to it with a run? — buy dates from Mosul and carry them to Basra; that will destroy your fortune.

## 52

سَأَكْفِيكَهُ - مَا أَنَسَ لَا أَنَسَ مُؤَانَسَتِكَ -  
 أَشَرَيْتَ مَا تَحْتَاجُ إِلَيْهِ [هَلِ اشْتَرَيْتَ] - يَا ابْنَتِي

خَذَى مَا أُعْطِيَكَ وَأَشْتَرَى مَا تُرِيدِينَ - بَكَتِ  
النِّسَاءُ عَلَى الْمُقْتُولِينَ [الْقَتْلَى] - مَنْ يَبْكِي الْآنَ  
سَيَضْحَكُ - أَظُنُّ أَنَّهُمْ سَيَبْقَوْنَ عَلَى مَا هُمْ الْآنَ  
عَلَيْهِ - لَا يُلْهِمَكَ لَعَبٌ عَنْ دُرُوسِكَ - نَهَيْتُهَا  
وَأَنْتَهَتْ - أَلْهَوْا عَمَّا يَصْنَعُونَ - أَلْهَيْنَ عَمَّا يَصْنَعْنَ -  
إِنَّ الْخَلِيفَةَ أَبْقَاهُ اللَّهُ لَا يَنْسَى مُكَافَأَةَ مَنْ  
يَسْتَحِقُّهَا .

## 53

he said, let me make my will, and he said, make it — they held the views of the philosophers — are you not ashamed that this should be the measure of your kindness to your son ? — when you feel no shame (at it) then act as you please — why do you hear and not understand ? — they made him rich and he made them little return — may God let you see in your sons what he let your father see in you and may God let your sons see in you what he let you see in your father — when he promised something good, he performed ; when he threatened, he did not perform and forgave — prefer what you will meet to-morrow to what you will never see — I used to find those who promise and perform, those who promise and do not perform wearied me — I was ashamed (of my treatment) of him and sent (one) to him with the jewels — we have what you want ; go to your house and it will come to you — let one of you guard his face from the Fire — the caliph appoints whom he will.

أَمَرَهُمْ أَنْ يَأْتُوا بِكُتُبِهِمْ - كَيْفَ رَأَيْتَ مِصْرَ -  
 هَؤُلَاءِ النِّسَاءُ هَلْ تَقِينَ مَا وَعَدَنَ - اتَّقُوا الْإِثْمَ -  
 حَيُّونَا تَحِيَّةَ الْكَرِيمِ - أَرِنِي كَيْفَ ذَلِكَ يَنْفَعُنِي -  
 سَلِ الْحَافِظَ أَنْ يُرِيكَ مَا فِي الصَّنَادِيقِ - اتَّقُوا  
 اللَّهَ وَأَكْرِمُوا الْمَلِكَ - أَؤْثِرُ أَنْ يَخَافَنِي النَّاسُ مِنْ  
 أَنْ يَتَّقُوا اللَّهَ - ائْتِنِي سَهْمِي مِنَ الطَّعَامِ فَاسْكُلْهُ  
 عِنْدَ النَّهْرِ - أَلَمْ تَرَوْا كُلُّكُمْ مَا كَتَبَتْ عَمَّكُمْ -  
 إِنَّ الدَّرْسَ الْكَثِيرَ يُعْنِي الصِّغَارَ.

if you do not kill him, I shall certainly marry him ;  
 then he will have killed your father and married your  
 mother ; so he killed him — had avarice been a shirt,  
 I would not have put it on ; had it been a road, I would  
 not have travelled it — if what keeps me alive is in heaven,  
 send it down ; if it is in the earth, bring it out ; if it is  
 far off, bring it near ; and if it is near, make it easy —  
 if you sit with the learned, be more eager to hear than to  
 speak — were it not that his deeds do not make necessary  
 (make impossible) the forgiving of him, he would deserve  
 to be left alive for this excellence — there is no strength  
 except under the garment of hard work — why do you not  
 compose long lampoons ? I have not found a poem (longer)  
 than one verse to travel — he deposited this money with

several men ; they made off with it, except one Jew — I have come only on business which concerns the minister and myself alone ; discussion of it is useful only in strict privacy — there is a remedy for every disease except death — you are nothing but a thing to which nobody pays any attention — they are infidels ; they shall be asked to repent ; if they repent (well and good) ; if not, their heads shall be cut off.

## 56

مَنْ لَمْ يُخْطِئْ لَمْ يَصْنَعْ شَيْئًا - جَاءَ كُلُّ السُّكَّانِ  
إِلَّا أَبَاكَ - إِنْ صَوَّبْتُمُوهُ فَاتَّبِعُوا أَسْوَتَهُ - إِنْ وَجَدْتَ  
أَتَى جِئْتُ فِي أَمْرٍ يَخْصُنِي وَلَا يَعْمُ الْقَوْمَ جَمِيعًا  
فَأَذْهَبْنِي - مَا أَيْقَظَنِي إِلَّا حَرُّ الشَّمْسِ عَلَى  
ظَهْرِي [لَمْ يُوقِظْنِي] - أَيْنَمَا سَكَنْتَ لَقِيتَ أَصْدِقَاءَ -  
لَا يُشَابِهُ مِنَ الْأَوْلَادِ أَبَاهُمْ إِلَّا مُحَمَّدٌ - إِنْ صَدَّقْتُمْ  
مَا يَقُولُ وَجَبَ عَلَيْكُمْ أَنْ تَفْعَلُوا عَلَيْهِ - لَمْ يَدْعُ  
مَنْ الْبِرِّ شَيْئًا إِلَّا فَعَلَهُ - إِنْ أَبْطَأْتُ الْأَكْلَ أَطْلَتَ  
الْعُمْرَ - إِذَا مَاتَ تَقَاتَلَ وَرَثَتُهُ عَلَى الْوَرَاثَةِ - لَوْلَاهُ  
لَهَلَكَ الْجَيْشُ .



## 57

he knew that when he refused them civil strife would flare up, from the consequences of which he would not be safe, and that the (right) policy made gentleness to them necessary — while we were burying him another body was carried — I felt acute pain and when it was in the night it became quiet and I slept — when your fathers made mistakes no one did right except you — when the illness grew strong upon him he kept his bed — there did not pass over this except less than a month until (less than a month after this) the caliph summoned his cousin and invested him with the ministry — I was talking to him when some young men appeared ; he called the eldest of them and whispered to him something apart from me and his fellows (which we could not hear) — he went with him until they reached the house like horses racing — his friends had evil forebodings and feared for him, yet the first thing they knew was that he was there driving the camels and they two drove them with him — he stayed in the town till, when the heat of summer fatigued him, he went to his estate.

## 58

لَمَّا اشْتَرَكُوا فِي الشُّغْلِ اشْتَرَكُوا فِي الرِّيحِ - لَمَّا  
 أَقْبَلَ سَهْمِي مِنَ الْأَجْرِ - مَتَى رَأَيْتُمْ أَحَدًا يُشَابِهُهُ  
 وَجْهًا - أَشْرَكَنِي مَعَ نَفْسِهِ فِي طَلَبِهِ مِنَ الْحُكُومَةِ -  
 إِذَا ذَهَبْتَ إِلَى بِلَادٍ غَرِيبَةٍ فَاتَّخِذْ عَادَاتِهَا - لَمَّا  
 أَعْطَوْنِي سَهْمِي لَمْ أَرْضَ عَنْهُ - أَصَابَهُ الْفَقْرُ وَإِذَا

أَصْدِقَائِهِ مَعَهُ [يُسَاعِدُونَهُ] - لَمَّا رَأَتْ أُلْهَى غَيْرَ  
 نَافِعٍ بَكَتْ - كَانَ يَشْتَغِلُ بِالْكِتَابَةِ حَتَّى إِذَا  
 قَدْ كَتَبَ أَوْ رَاقًا كَثِيرَةً أَعْيَا بَيَاضُ الْوَرَقِ عَيْنَيْهِ -  
 إِنَّ الْوَعْدَ إِذَا لَمْ يَصْحَبْهُ إِنْجَازٌ يُحَقِّقُهُ كَكَلَامٍ لَا  
 مَعْنَى لَهُ .

## 59

I stayed in the land of polytheism 4 months and 11 days — she bought one cock and 15 hens — his caravan consisted of 100 camels and 25 donkeys — he was born in the year 1932 — the war lasted two years and a half — the government takes one-tenth of all the goods of the merchants who come into its country from outside — I have not eaten anything for three nights (days) and I want you to stay with me that we may eat and talk — his death was two years before the great earthquake — he is 65 years old — a kind act is only perfected by 3 qualities, doing it quickly, making light of it, and keeping it secret.

## 60

إِنَّ أَنْوَاعَ الثَّمَرِ هِيَ اثْنَانِ وَسَبْعُونَ نَوْعًا - هِيَ  
 بِنْتُ سَبْعٍ وَعَشْرَةِ سَنَةٍ - كَانَ ذَلِكَ الشَّيْخُ أَبَا قَوْمِهِ  
 كَانَ لَهُ سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ ابْنًا وَاثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ ابْنَةً - قَطَعَتْ  
 اللَّحْمَ اثْنَى عَشَرَ سَهْمًا - انْصَرَفَ الْأَضْيَافُ اثْنَيْنِ

اَثْنَيْنِ - سَافَرَ تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ يَوْمًا يَعْبُرُ ثَلَاثَةَ اَنْهَارٍ  
وَيَصْعَدُ فِي سَعْبَةِ جِبَالٍ - اُغْفُ عَنْهُ سَبْعِينَ مَرَّةً -  
وَصَلَ رَسُولِي بَعْدَ وُصُولِي بِثَلَاثِ سَاعَاتٍ - وَرِثَ  
اَبْتَهُ رُبْعَ رُبْعِ مَالِهِ - هُوَ الْاِبْنُ السَّابِعُ لِاِبْنِ  
سَابِيعٍ .

## 61

he sat like a tired man — have you ever heard the like of this? he said, no, the like of it has never torn my ears — Moses hit the stone once and water came out enough for all the people — the woman of the house drove out the thief, hitting him with the broom — cause them to hear the word of God and bring them to their place of safety — we journeyed some stages and reached a place where lions were numerous where we feared for our horses — let us now mention the history from the birth of the apostle of God to (the time of) his mission — they tried me with questions of which I understood nothing — we crossed the river, some by a ferry and some by a ford — he was the most remembering of men for what he heard, the least of them in (need of) sleep, and the most enduring of wakefulness.

## 62

اشْتَهَرَ اسْمُهُ فِي الْمَشْرِقِ وَالْمَغْرِبِ - دَخَلَ اللَّصُّ  
دِخْلَةَ الْأَسَدِ وَخَرَجَ خُرْجَةَ الشَّاةِ - يَسْبَحُ أَوْلَادُهُ  
جَمِيعًا سَبْحَةَ السَّمَكِ - مَا دَامَتِ الْحَيَاةُ لَا أَتْرُكُ

الْمُقَاتِلَ - قَطَعَ الْطِفْلُ إصْبَعَهُ بِمَقَصِّ الْخِيَاطِ - يَغْسِلُ  
 كَلْبَهُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ غَسَلَتَيْنِ - إِنَّ الْعَقْلَ لِلْإِنْسَانِ مَبْرَدٌ  
 يَبْرُدُ بِهِ خُسُونَةَ الْقَلْبِ وَمِكنَسَةُ يُزِيلُ بِهَا أَعْمَالَ  
 السَّوِّءِ وَمِدْقٌ يَدُقُّ بِهِ رَأْسَ الشَّيْطَانِ وَمُنْخُلٌ يَنْظِفُ  
 بِهِ أَفْكَارَهُ - يَفْتَحِرُ الشَّامِيُّ بِشَلِيجِ جِبَالِهِ وَفَوَاكِهَهَا  
 وَالْمِصْرِيُّ بِمَاءِ نَهْرِهِ - مَا كَانَ لِلنَّجَّارِ أَنْ يَجْهَلَ  
 كَيْفِيَّاتِ أَنْوَاعِ الْخَشَبِ الْمُخْتَلِفَةِ .

## 63

the judge decided against the plaintiff and acquitted the defendant — he began asking a loan of me and I lent him 500 dinars to get quit of him — he saw a sick fox which could not move and said, this fox must die of hunger — lead us in the straight path, the path of those to whom you have given bounty, who were not the object of your anger and have not gone astray — man wants by nature the things forbidden — some people fell into an argument and looked for a passer-by to decide between them ; when he asked about the matter in dispute they could not explain the point of difference — then the unbelievers will drop their heads in fear of what they may see and will wail — you cannot defend yourselves, you must submit — misfortunes happen inevitably ; some of them are mercy and grace from God to his servant and others are punishment (vengeance) — be rich if you will or poor, care is unavoidable in the world.

إِخْمِلُوا الْوَلَدَ الْمَنْشَىٰ عَلَيْهِ إِلَى الْمُسْتَشْفَى - إِنْ  
 الْمُدْعَى عَلَيْهِ فِي الْمَحْكَمَةِ وَأَيْنَ الْمُدْعَى - كَانَتْ  
 بِنْتُ زَمِنَتْ نَحْوَ خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً لَا يُمَكِّنُهَا أَنْ  
 تَتَقَلَّبَ مِنْ جَنْبٍ إِلَى جَنْبٍ أَوْ يُقَلِّبَهَا غَيْرُهَا - مَا  
 ظَنَنْتُ أَنَّهُ أَمْكَنُهُ أَنْ يَذْكُرَنِي حَتَّى دُعِيَ بِي -  
 مَا كَانَ مَعَكَ ثَمَنُ هَذَا الْبَطِّيخِ مَا قَدَرْتَ تَمْنَعُ  
 نَفْسَكَ مِنْهُ - أَتْرَكُ مَشْدُودًا عَلَى وَثَاقِي - لَمْ نَجِدْ  
 مِنْ دَفْعِ ذَلِكَ إِلَيْهِ بُدًّا - حَسْبِيَ الَّذِي بِي - كَيْفَ  
 أَصْبَحَ زَوْجُكِ قَالَتْ لَا حَيًّا فَيُرْجَى وَلَا مَيِّتًا  
 فَيُنْسَى - لَا تُعْطَى مَا لَيْسَ عِنْدَكَ .

I saw (thought) the wisdom of the poor despised —  
 I shall wash disgrace off me with the sword though God's  
 providence brings on me what it may — I know, the  
 command (business) of the apostle of God is more blessed  
 than mine — it is as if al-Husain was advancing towards  
 you — the army feared death till the hearts of most of  
 them were as air — you speak the words of one whose

character it is not to keep truth — the importance of the world in the eye of Abd al-Rahman and that he thought the beggar who came to him the angel of death made him small in my sight — the gifts of the sultan were only for the poor and those whose hearts had been won over — take us out of this land the people of which are evil-doers — I seem to see you pretending to be ignorant — I have suffered from time (fate) all my life till I cannot hope for prosperity — the king of Egypt devotes his attention to the improvement of agriculture especially cotton.

وُلِدَ الرَّجُلُ الشَّرُّ لَيْلَةَ مَاتَ فِيهَا الرَّجُلُ الْخَيْرُ -  
 كَأَنِّي بِكُمْ تَكَرَّهُونَنِي - إِنْ تُعِيدُوهَا نَعِدُ لَكُمْ  
 مِنْ هِجَاءٍ سَائِرٍ كَلَامُهُ - يَا سَامِعَ الدُّعَاءِ  
 خَلِّصْنِي مِمَّا يَحْتَالُونَ عَلَيَّ أَغْدَائِي - كَأَنِّي بِكُمْ  
 تُرَاهِنُونَ عَلَيَّ فَرَسٍ لَا يَسْبِقُ فِي السَّبَاقِ - أَرْتَنَا  
 الْخِيَّاطَةَ ثِيَابًا مُخْتَلِفَةً أَلْوَانُهَا - مَنْ عَلَّمَ شَيْخًا  
 فَكَأَنَّهُ يَبِضُّ أَسْوَدَ - مَا رَأَيْتُ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْخُلَفَاءِ  
 أَكْرَهَ إِلَيْهِ الدِّمَاءَ مِنْ هِشَامٍ - كَانَ يَتَعَشَّى وَلَا  
 يَتَعَدَّى فَحَسْبُهُ ذَلِكَ أَرْبَعِينَ سَنَةً .

beware of begging from men, for it is man's last way of earning — how vigorously he is washing himself — we ask you by God to observe towards us the testament of the apostle of God — what a bad decision they have arrived at — know that God is your lord, what a lord, what a helper — worthy Musaab! whose ancestors are noble — how careless she is in her own affairs, how busy about those of others — how thirsty the boy is, I cannot satisfy him — beware of those who make excuses — I swore extravagant oaths, he shall not thirst so long as I live — lack of money and opportunity made me unable to help him.

نِعَمَ ذَلِكَ الْوَلَدُ سَابِحًا - أَكْذِبُ بِهِ وَالْعَجَبُ أَنْ  
كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ يُصَدِّقُهُ - مَا أَغْطَشَ الطِّفْلَ مَلَأَتْ لَهُ  
ثَلَاثَ كُوُوسٍ لَبَنًا وَيُفَرِّغُهَا جَمِيعًا - مَا أَسْرَعَ  
مَا يَأْتِيكُمْ الْعَدُوُّ - إِذْ انْقَطَعَ عَنْهُمْ الْمِيَاهُ قَالُوا  
أَهْلَكْتَنَا قَالَ قَدْ بَلَغْتُمُ الْمَاءَ مَا أَقْرَبَكُمْ بِهِ -  
بِئْسَ زَوْجُ الْمَرْأَةِ الْحُرَّةِ أَنْتَ - وَالَّذِي نَفْسِي بِيَدِهِ  
لَيَنَامَنَّ عُرْيَانًا فِي الثَّلْجِ - وَرَبِّ الْكُعْبَةِ إِلَّا  
بَيَّنْتَ لِي رَسُولَتَكَ - وَاللَّهِ لَا شَمَّ قَاتِلُ مُسْلِمٍ رَائِحَةٌ  
الْجَنَّةِ - يَجِبُ أَنْ أَعْرِفَكَ أَنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْأَخْمَقُ لَا أَنَا.

## 69

I shall not come in and not go away until you ride to the mosque — either I go to Syria, and how unpleasant that will be, or I stay ; and therein is a reward for me — we claim that men are graded in excellence not by their fathers but by their acts, their characters, their magnanimity, and their high ambitions — the Arabs say of one who is asked to give and cannot and refuses, my house is stingy not I — I was alone with her and the moon showed her to me ; when it disappeared she showed it to me — do not speak of what you do not know lest you be suspected in what you do know — do not forbid a quality (mode of behaviour) and come to (do) something like it — the Arabs will not consent to put you in authority as you are not one of them — this poem is something which happened in youth ; I made it about my wife. I was inclined to (in love with) her, she was my slave and ruled my heart ; but now, I have had no truck with such things for years and have not made poetry for a long time.

## 70

لَيْتَنِي لَمْ تَلِدْنِي أُمِّي وَلَمْ أَرِ نُورَ النَّهَارِ - كُنْتُ  
أَسْتَرُ فِي بَيْتِهَا وَهِيَ تَصْعَدُ إِلَيَّ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ تَسْأَلُ  
مَا أَحْتَاجُ إِلَيْهِ - حَلَفَ أَلَّا يَبْدُلَ هَذَا الْقَمِيصَ أَوْ  
يَفْرَغَ مِنْ أَمْرِ مَنْ شَتَمَهُ - وَرَدَّتِ الْكُتُبُ إِلَى  
مَخْمُودٍ وَهُوَ عَامِلُ الشَّأْمِ أَنْ يَجْمَعَ بَيْنَنَا فِي الْمَسْجِدِ  
وَلَا نَبْرَحَ أَوْ يُرْضِينَا - رَبِّ آكِلٍ شَاكِرٍ أَعْظَمُ



أَجْرًا مِنْ صَائِمٍ - أَمَرَ الْأَمَةَ بِغَسْلِ الشَّيَابِ وَتَنْشِيفِهَا  
 تَنْشِيفًا تَامًّا - رُبَّ صَحْرَاءَ قَطَعَتْهَا وَذَخِيرَةٌ وَجَدَتْهَا  
 وَمُشْكَلَةٌ حَلَلَتْهَا - سَأَلَنِي ابْنُ كَمْ أَنْتَ [ كَمْ عُمْرُكَ  
 - كَمْ سَنَةٌ لَكَ ] - لَيْتَكَ تَدْخُلُ فَتُسَلِّمَ عَلَى الْأَمِيرِ  
 وَتُخْبِرَهُ بِحَقِيقَةِ الْأَمْرِ فَيَسْكُنَ غَضَبَهُ عَنَّا - أَبْطِئِ  
 الْأَكْلَ فَتَهْضِمِ الطَّعَامَ هَضْمًا كَامِلًا.

## 71

I love you for yourself more than my loving you for myself (profit) — how do you find yourself? I find myself not finding what I desire and desiring what I do not find. I am in a very bad age among very bad men; he who is generous does not find (anything to give) and he who does find is not generous — by the excuse we make God has enabled you to dispense with excusing yourself and by our love to you God has enabled us to dispense with thinking badly of you — to whom did your father give his dying charge about you? he gave his charge to me, not about me — liberal of tongue without action! would that the liberality of the tongue was in your hands — but God has saved me by you; no one has consoled me with a more useful than your consolation — satisfy my brother and my ally who between them took the captive — a sultan wanted to build a palace and estimated for this millions of dirhams; the expenditure was above the estimate several times and he required the minister to send money for this although the income (of the country) came short of the outgoings — he picked out those who sold in the markets things like cooking pots and old shirts

and what one would be compelled to think unsaleable except from dire distress and old women who sold what they had spun and gave them several times the price of it (the goods) and left it (the goods) with them.

## 72

مَا أَغْرِفُ لَهُذِهِ الشَّيَابِ ثَمَنًا وَلَا رَأَيْتُ مِثْلَهَا قَطُّ  
وَلَوْلَا أَنِّي شَهِدْتُهَا لَكَذَّبْتُ بِوُجُودِ مِثْلِهَا وَلَوْ  
قُلْتُ أَنَّ ثَمَنَ كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِائَةُ أَلْفِ دِينَارٍ مَا خِفْتُ  
الْبُعْدَ - وَاللَّهِ مَا كَانَ فِي نَفْسِي أَنْ أُعْطِيَهَا إِلَّا  
مِائَتَيْ دِرْهَمٍ وَلَكِنَّ اللَّهَ أَجْرَى لَهَا عَلَى يَدَيِ  
مِائَتَيْ دِينَارٍ فَلَا أَزْجِعُ فِي ذَلِكَ أُعْطِيَهَا - كَانَ  
الْوَزِيرُ يَسْتَخِفُّ صَاحِبَ دِيْوَانِ الْخَرَاجِ وَإِذَا أَرَادَ  
عَمَلًا مِنَ الدِّيْوَانِ أَوْ حِسَابًا غَفَلَ عَنِ الصَّاحِبِ  
وَأَسْتَدْعَى الْكِتَابَ وَأُسْتَشَارَهُمُ وَالصَّاحِبُ حَاضِرٌ  
فَإِذَا أَرَادَ عَمَلًا يَعْلَمُ أَنَّ صِنَاعَةَ الصَّاحِبِ لَا تَقْبَى  
بِهِ وَلَا يُمَكِّنُهُ الْكَلَامُ فِيهِ شَاوَرَهُ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ النَّاسِ

اِيْمِيْنَ نَقَصَهُ - قَالَ النَّبِيُّ فِي النِّسَاءِ شَاوِرُهُنَّ  
 خَالَفَهُنَّ وَإِتَى عَصِيَّتُهُ وَأَطَعَتْ صَاحِبَتِي فَأَشْتَرَيْتُ  
 عَلَامًا فَسَرَقَ - لَا يُغْنِي حَذَرٌ مِنْ قَدَرٍ - مَا الزُّهْدُ  
 فِي الدُّنْيَا قَالَ أَنْ لَا يَغْلِبَ الْحَرَامُ صَبْرَكَ وَلَا  
 الْحَلَالُ شُكْرَكَ - عَلِمَ أَوْلَادِي السَّبَّاحَةَ قَبْلَ  
 الْكِتَابَةِ فَإِنَّهُمْ يُصِيبُونَ مَنْ يَكْتُبُ عَنْهُمْ وَلَا  
 يُصِيبُونَ مَنْ يَسْبَحُ عَنْهُمْ.

# INDEX

## (Supplementary to the Table of Contents)

- accent, 22
- accompanying circumstance  
(word or sentence), 60, 92 f.,  
196, 207
- accusative, 38 ff., 45, 56, 60, 70,  
79, 86, 97, 108 f., 160 f., 196,  
200, 202
- adjective, viii, 25, 29, 34, 70,  
91 f., 94, 196 f.  
— relative, 182 f.
- adverbs, 60, 79, 91
- agreement between parts of the  
sentence :
  - noun and adjective, 25 f.,  
45, 49
  - relative and antecedent,  
129, 196 f.
  - subject and verb, 55, 130
- article, definite, 34, 64, 94, 197
- assimilation, 25, 36, 102, 114 f.,  
125 f., 148
- attraction, 196 f.
- broken plurals, 40, 176, 183 f.
- collective nouns, 29 f.
- comparison, see elative
- compensation, 138, 148, 154
- conditional sentences, 65, 83,  
157, 165 f.
- conjunctions, 40 f., 83, 88, 105,  
141 f., 207, 210
- consecutive clauses, 111, 114
- construct state, 33 f., 39 f., 73,  
75, 112, 194 f.
- diminutives, 182
- diphthongs, 18, 39
- direct speech, 113
- dual, 49, 54, 59, 129
- elative adjective, 69 f., 149 f.
- emphasis, 34 f., 209 f.
- feminine, 39, 45 f., 51, 54, 148
- final clauses, 111, 113
- genitive, 38 ff., 45, 79, 209
- hamza* (glottal stop), viii, 19 f.,  
148 f.
- hamzat al wasl*, see liaison
- history of the language, viii,  
135, 146
- hypothetical sentences, 159
- impersonal expressions, 188 f.
- indirect speech, 111, 208
- infinitive, 82, 90 f., 117, 180
- liaison, 21, 36, 39, 49, 74
- madda*, 20, 142
- moods ; energetic, 82 f., 159  
— imperative, 159, 201  
— jussive, 82, 87 f., 133, 146,  
158 f., 165  
— subjunctive, 81, 87, 113 f.,  
204, 210
- negative, superfluous, 204 f.
- nominal sentence, 56, 85, 111,  
158, 166, 168
- nominative, 38 ff., 45, 86, 209
- noun forms, 30, 67 f., 125, 134,  
147 ff.
- numbers, 22
- nunation, 19, 24, 86
- oaths, 83, 88, 203
- oblique case, 39, 45, 48 f.
- passive, 188
- prepositions, 35, 50, 169, 188,  
202 f.
- prohibitions, 82, 88
- pronominal suffixes, 48 f., 56,  
65, 73, 109, 112
- pronouns, indefinite, 51, 83, 130  
— interrogative, 64 f.  
— personal, 26, 56, 109, 112,  
188, 201  
— relative, 196
- quadriliteral roots, 187
- questions, 26, 64 f., 208
- second declension, 45, 70, 184
- secondary roots, 185
- shadda*, 19, 25, 133

- substantival sentences, 111 f., 114  
*sukûn*, 18  
tense, future, 53, 59, 88, 204  
— future-perfect, 97  
— pluperfect, 97 f.  
— present, 53, 55, 83, 87, 168  
verb, auxiliary, 97, 117 f., 189  
— defective, 86, 119, 158, 200  
verbal forms, imperfect, 81, 87, 97 f., 100 f., 117 f., 124, 167, 189 f., 204  
— — perfect, 54 f., 87 f., 97, 100 f., 165 f., 168, 204  
verbal sentences, 56, 87, 112, 121, 158, 166, 168  
vocative, 30 f., 194  
wish, 81, 87, 158